

lodged and entertained them with the greatest Magnificence. As Winter approached, and the Dress of the Ambassador and his Family was no Way suited to so cold a Climate as *France*, the General had Cloaths made for them in the *French* Mode; and furnished them with all Manner of Necessaries for the Voyage.

THEY embarked, September the twenty-seventh, 1670, on board a Ship of the Company; but through contrary Winds, were sixty-four Days in their Passage to *Dieppe*, where she anchored, December the third. The Ambassador was honourably received by the Governor of the Town, one of the Company's Directors, who lodged and defrayed his Expenses, while he rested a few Days to recover the Fatigues of the Voyage. The Directors of the Company, being informed of his Landing, had fitted-up the *Hôtel de Luynes*, at *Paris*, for his Reception; and, on Notice of his Approach, sent two of their Number to meet him at *St. Dennis*, with two Coaches and Six. In this Manner he entered *Paris*, December the thirteenth, and alighted at the *Hôtel*, where the Company sent to compliment him in their Name.

As soon as the King had Notice of his Arrival, he sent one of his Gentlemen, with Orders to stay with him, and attend him in Person wherever he went. The Company sent him also the *Sieur d'Elbeuf*, with some other Officers, and two of their Coaches, and had him treated with great Magnificence. He was informed, the King would come to *Paris*, and give him an Audience in his Palace of *Tuilleries*, on the nineteenth, at ten in the Morning. The Ambassador, on this Occasion, showed his good Sense: He said to the *Sieur d'Elbeuf*, "Did not I commit an Error in going-out Yesterday? I should have seen nothing, till I had seen the King, which was the main End of my Voyage; I will go-out no more till I have this Honour."

THE Directors, in a Body, went to visit him. The Person appointed to speak, after having, in *Portuguese*, insisted on the Grandeur of the King, his Riches and Virtues, added, that he might easily perceive the Difference between a Company (honoured with the Protection of so great a King) and the *Dutch*. The Ambassador replied, That what he had seen of *France*, since his Arrival, convinced him of what it was; and that he believed no Country in *Europe* (though he had not seen them) could compare with it: That he knew the Value of the Company, by their Manner of treating him; and needed no more to convince him of the Falseness of the *Dutch* Reproaches: "But, added he, I must have the Honour to see the King, and assure

him, the Kingdom of *Arcadie* is wholly his, and its Ports and Trade at the Company's Service." One of the Directors asking, how he found his Health, he answered, "My Health was but indifferent, but it is better since I have seen the Gentlemen of the Company; and when I have seen the King, I shall be quite well."

THE Company having caused very rich Cloaths to be made for him, his Children, and Wives, he said to those who presented them, "I see that *France* intends to show its Wealth by thus adorning those, whose Lot is Poverty."

THE Day of Audience being come, M. Ber-^{Count de la} *lisle*, Master of the Ceremonies, came to the *Hôtel de Luynes*, with the King's and Queen's Coaches, to conduct the Ambassador to Court. He went in one of the King's Coaches, and his Children in the Queen's. In this Manner, he entered the Square of the *Tuilleries*, where the *French* and *Swiss* Guards, who were on Duty, formed two Battalions before the Palace. The two Companies of his Majesty's Musketeers formed two others in the inner Court. The Ambassador greatly admired the good Air of these Troops, their rich Uniform and Arms. He was then conducted into an Hall of the lower Apartment, where he was showed the Curiosities and immense Riches of the King, which were placed in Order on large Tables. He beheld these with Attention, and being asked what he thought of them, replied, "I think I am going to see the King, who is far beyond them."

As about three Quarters of an Hour, M. Ber-^{And so he} *lisle* returned, to let him know it was Time to go-up. He found drawn-up on each Side the Stair-Case, the Archers of the Provost of *Paris*, having at their Head the M. de *Saureber*, Grand Provost of *France*, magnificently dressed. The hundred *Swiss* Guards stood ranged from the Head of the Stairs to the Guard-Hall; at the Door of which he was received by the M. de *Reichart*, Captain of the Guards in waiting, attended by his Officers; and by him conducted, between two Rows of Guards, to the Door of the first Anti-Chamber, which he passed through Crowds of People of Distinction, who filled it and the Gallery: So that he could scarce get to the King, who was seated at the upper-End, on his Throne, raised on an Estrade of several Steps.

HIS Majesty was distinguished by the prodigies of the King, our Number of Diamonds which covered his Cloaths. He had at his Right, Monsieur the Dauphin, and Monsieur the Duke of *Orleans* on his Left. Below these, on each Side, stood the Princes of the Blood, and lower, the Dukes

* *Marechal's Voyage*, vol. 2. p. 269, & seqq.

* The same, p. 274, & seqq.

Shore-
Coast.

and Peers of *Fraser*, who formed a shining Circle round him. The Ambassador, when he reached the Middle of the Gallery, made a low Reverence; a second, a little farther on; and a third, when he reached the Foot of the Steps. He then mounted the Estrade, and prostrated himself at the King's Feet, his Children doing the same a little behind him. He began his Compliment by raising his Head a little; and speaking in *Portuguese*, told *Louis XIV.* That the King of *Ardrab*, his Master, having learnt the Wonders Fame reported of his Majesty, had sent him to allure him how much he desired to gain his Favour, by offering himself and his Kingdom at his Service. *Louis* made him rise, and observing the Ambassador, who was in some Confusion, held a Paper in his Hand, asked what it was? The *Seur d'Elolz*, who officiated as Interpreter, replied, That the Ambassador, fearing that the Awe of his Majesty's Presence might disorder the Speech he designed, had wrote it the Day before, and bid him translate it into *French*, that it might be read if his Majesty thought proper. The King consented, commanding *d'Elolz* to read it aloud. It was as follows.

“ S I R E,

His Speech

“ THE King of *Ardrab* and *Alphani*, my Sovereign, has nominated me his Ambassador to your Majesty, to offer you all that his Kingdoms can afford, and his Protection for all the Ships you shall please to send there; assuring you, that his Dominions, Ports, and Trade, are entirely at your Devotion, and open to all your Subjects.

“ To convince your Majesty farther of his sincere Desire of maintaining the Friendship he intreats of your Majesty, he has charged me to declare, that, for the future, the Gentlemen of the Company settled at *Offra*, shall pay no more than twenty-four Slaves Custom, instead of eighty they pay at present; which is less than the *Portuguese* formerly paid, or than the *Spaniards*, *Danes*, *Swedes*, and *English* pay, on account of the *Dutch*, who have long traded with them: But he has ordered me to assure your Majesty of his protecting your Subjects against the *Dutch*, and to keep his Word exactly on that Head. He also engages, the *French* Ships in his Ports, shall, on all Occasions, be preferred to the *Dutch*, and loaded before the latter are allowed to begin.

Lopez's
Embassy

“ THE King has directed me to inform your Majesty, that on Occasion of a Dispute between your Subjects at *Ardrab* and the *Dutch*, in relation to the Flag, the King judging the Distinction due to so great a Prince, placed the Factor, your Subject, on the right Hand and lodged him in his Palace; the *Dutch* Factor having only the left Hand, and being lodged with the Prince his Son. On this Account, he desires to know from your Majesty the Honours you would have paid to your Flag, that he may order them to be paid it through all his Dominions.

“ AMONGST other Things, the King intreats of your Majesty, that you would send two religious Men to instruct some of his Subjects, who have a little Knowledge of Christianity, which they earnestly desire to cultivate. He also has commanded me to present your Majesty my two Sons here before you, and beseech you to accept them favourably; which I shall esteem as the greatest Happiness that befall me, by the Advantages they must receive in serving so great a Prince: Likewise, to join with them two Hangers, two *Assagays*, a Vest, and Carpet. He earnestly intreats your Majesty to accept of these, and to believe, that if his Country produced any Thing more curious, or that he thought could be agreeable to your Majesty, he would send it with great Joy; in regard he desires nothing more than to persuade your Majesty, that his Dominions are yours as entirely as his own.”

THIS Speech the King heard attentively, and was pleased, in Answer, to tell the Ambassador, That he was much obliged to the King of *Ardrab*, his Master, for his Compliments, as well as for sending him for his Ambassador, whose Person was very agreeable to him: That he accepted the Offer he made him of his two Sons, who should stay with him while he resided at *Paris*, after which he would take Care of them himself; and that as to what related to Trade, his Majesty referred him to the Company.

AFTER this Answer, *M. de Berlise* having made a Sign to the Ambassador, that he might withdraw, he again prostrated himself at the King's Feet; then rising, made a low Bow, retiring backward, without turning till he had made a third Reverence near the Door of the Gallery. He left the Palace in the same Order he came, and was reconducted by *M. de Berlise*, in the King's Coach, to the *Hôtel de Laines*.

Slave-
Coast.

2. Sequel of the Embassy.

The Ambassador's Audience of the Queen, and Dauphin. Civilities paid him. Regaled by the Company. Audience of the Secretary. Their Conversation. Visits the Company. Their Proposals. The Ambassador's Answer. Their mutual Presents. Audience of Loure. Returns to Ardab, whence the French withdraw to Whidah.

^a He next visited the King's Ministers, and the chief Lords of the Court: He also, in Return, received a great Number of Visits, and all the Civilities could be paid him. The King's Comedians entertained him with the Representation of *le Fyftin de Pierre*, and the Novelty of this Spectacle much delighted him. He often assisted at divine Service in the principal Churches, and showed a very edifying Attention. The Directors of the Company regaled him with a Party of Pleasure at *Rambouillet*, where they carried him with seven Coaches and six; and gave him a Concert of the King's Hautboys, which he thought far beyond his Country Music. He said pleasantly, "They would take him for a Liar, when he should tell what he had seen in France, it would so far exceed their Comprehension."

^b There were provided at *Rambouillet* four ^{Regaled by} Tables of twelve Covers each, which were all ^{the Company} served at the same Time with the greatest Elegance. At the first was placed the Ambassador, with the King's Gentlemen of the Household, who attended him, and some of the Directors. His Sons and some other Directors were at the second, his three Wives and some Ladies of Distinction at the third. One of the Directors sat at the fourth with such Gentlemen as had been invited. The Hautboys played during Dinner. Every one admired the Politeness, good Sense and Sobriety of the Ambassador. After Dinner he was diverted with some Tricks played by Monkeys, and thence conducted to *Vincennes*, where he seemed highly pleased with the Apartments, as well as the Richness and Taste of the Furniture. On this Occasion he said, "After seeing a small Part of France, it was needless to see the rest of the World."

He was brought home by Torch-Light. The following Days he spent in seeing the royal Palaces, and the fine Houses in the Neighbourhood of Paris.

^c He had an Audience of *M. de Lionne*, Secretary of State for foreign Affairs. This Minister received him in the Midst of the fine Stair-Cafe of the magnificent Hotel he had built; and through rich Apartments of State conducted him to his great Closet. There they sat-down each in Arm-Chairs next the Chimney, surrounded by a great Number of Persons of Distinction, who had desired to be Witnesses to this Audience.

^f The Ambassador told *M. de Lionne* in Portuguese, that as he had come from the King his Master to offer the King of France his Services and Dominions, he thought it his Duty to beg, that he would contribute his best Offices, to promote the good Correspondence between the two Princes, which Commerce was about to establish; and he hoped this the rather, as he was

Audience of
the Queen.

^a NEXT Day, December the twentieth, the *Sieur de Berlise* came at two o'Clock in the Afternoon with the same Attendance to conduct him to an Audience of the Queen. He passed the Stair-Cafe to her Majesty's Apartment, through the hundred *Sieis* ranged on each Side, and was received at the Entry of the Hall by the Captain of the Guard in waiting to the Queen; who received him in her Chamber, surrounded by the Princesses and Ladies of her Court, adorned with Jewels as much as the Mourning the Court was then in would permit.

The Ambassador made three profound Bows, and when he came within four Steps of the Queen, prostrated himself as he had done before the King, with his three Sons and his three Wives; who all seven, by a Clapping of their Hands, repeated several Times, expressed their Veneration. After this, the Ambassador knelt, and having made his Compliment in Portuguese very politely, the Queen obliged him to rise in Spite of his Reluctance, and made him a very engaging Answer in Spanish. He then made a second Prostration and retreated backward, making, by the Way, three low Bows. His Wives and Sons did the same, and all, by their Looks, expressed the greatest Astonishment. The Crowd was so great, that it was with Difficulty they got to their Coaches.

And Dauphin.

The Ambassador was next conducted to the old *Louvre*, to the Apartment of the Dauphin, where he was received by the Duke of *Montaucier*, who introduced him to the Prince. He observed the same Ceremonies as he had done to the King and Queen. He made the Prince a Compliment, in which he took Notice of the Happiness of the Duke of *Montaucier*, in being chosen to educate the first Prince in the World. He told the Dauphin, that the great Prince of *Ardab* had charged him to assure him of his Respect, and to desire his Favour and Friendship, which he would do all he could to merit. After this, he presented the Dauphin some Arms sent him by the Prince. The Dauphin having answered these Compliments in a graceful Manner, the Ambassador retired, and was reconducted as the Day before.

assured

assured of his particular Merit, and the Zeal he had for the Honour of his King his Sovereign.

M. DE LIONNE replied in *Spanish*, that he would use his Interest with Pleasure in any thing that related to the Service of the King of *Ararab*, and to maintain the good Harmony he mentioned. After this he asked him, what Ports there were in his Master's Dominions; if his Kingdom was large, and if he had often Wars with his Neighbours? The Ambassador replied, that the States of the King his Master were of no great Extent along the Coast, but ran so far Inland, that they were a Fortnight's Journey to pass: That neither on the Coast in *Ararab*, nor in all *Guinea*, were any Ports or Harbours, but only Roads where Ships might find good Anchorage; and as Tempests were rare on the Coast, Ships suffered no great Inconveniences from that Defect, except the violent Surf the Sea made on the Shore: That the King his Master had powerful Neighbours, with whom he was often at War, but on those Occasions he always marched at the Head of a numerous Army, composed of Horse and Foot, well armed and disciplined.

The Ambassador taking Leave of M. de Lionne, who reconducted him to his Coach, was carried to the Hotel of the Company; where, alighting, he was received by the Directors in a Body, and conducted to the Hall where they assemble. Here the Ambassador told them, that he had long waited this Occasion to thank them for all the Favours he had received, and daily continued to receive from the Company: That his Gratitude would be perpetual, and they might always look on him as a zealous and obliged Servant. The Directors answered this Compliment the best Way they could; and thanked the Ambassador for the Expedition with which the King of *Ararab* had dispatched their Ships the *Concord* and *Justice*, as well as for the Grant he had made them of a Settlement and Factory in his Dominions.

The Ambassador then desirous to hear what they had to propose in Relation to Trade, and answer their Demands as far as his Instructions would allow, one of the Directors, in the Name of the rest, made the following Propositions:

First, THAT the Company's Ships, trading to *Ararab*, should have the Preference of all other Nations.

Secondly, THAT they should pay but twenty-four Slaves for Duties, instead of eighty, paid by their last Vessels; and that this Duty should be reduced for the *French* to the old Footing, as in the Time of the *Portuguese*.

Thirdly, THAT the King of *Ararab* should oblige those of his Subjects, who were the Company's Debtors, to make speedy Satisfaction.

Fourthly, THAT their Factors should not be obliged to trust any Lord or Grandee, if they thought him not in a Condition to pay.

Fifthly, THAT Leave should be granted to cover their Magazines and Factory with Tiles instead of Straw, which exposed their Goods to Fire.

Sixthly, THAT the King should be pleased to take the Company, its Factors and Effects under his immediate Protection.

ON granting these Articles, the Company engaged to keep its Warehouses constantly stocked with Goods, so that there should be always Merchandize to the Value of five hundred Slaves in Reserve, over and above the common Call, which would serve as a Security in the King's Hands: Likewise to send Vessels yearly to supply the Trade, and to trade with no other Prince.

THE Ambassador, after having attentively heard these Proposals, readily agreed, that all should be granted without Restriction, excepting the first and fifth. With regard to the first, he said, that if the Company would deal for Slaves only with the King his Master, he could assure them, they should always have the Preference, and their Ships be loaded before those of any other Nation in the Road. As to the fifth, he promised to use his good Offices with the King to obtain it: But not being sure of his Master's Intentions, he could not give his Word for the Success.

THUS ended this Negotiation, of which a Duplicate was made in *French* and *Portuguese*, and signed by both Parties; the Ambassador keeping one, and the other the Company. To them he made a Present of a Carpet, the Manufacture of his Country, being the Bark of Trees interwoven; and the Directors in Return gave him a large Mirror, with a Frame of Copper gilt, with which he seemed well-pleased. After this he took his Leave, and was reconducted by the Directors to his Coach.

ALL the rest of his Stay at *Paris* was employed in paying or receiving Visits; and he was every where treated with all the Kindness he could wish. Several Persons of Quality made him Presents. The Ladies did the same to his Wives: Who, in a short Time, learnt the vast Difference between the *French* Manners and theirs; and showed, by their Expressions, that they would willingly have embraced the Condition of their Children, who were to stay behind them.

THE Ambassador had his Audience of Leave with the same Ceremonies as at first; and was, by this Time, so well accustomed to the *French* Manners, that he appeared neither constrained in

Slave-
Coast.

his Actions nor Discourse, which greatly pleased the King, Queen, and Dauphin. He left *Paris* about the Middle of *January*, 1671, to go to *Havre-de-Grace*, where two Ships waited for him^a. By the King's Order his Charges were defrayed, and all Honours imaginable paid him on the Road. When the King of *France's* Presents, for his Master and for himself, were brought him, he beheld them with Amazement, so much he was surprized at their Number, Value, and Beauty. He said, like a Man who awakens out of a deep Swoon, "There is but one Monarch in the World. All Kings must yield to the King of *France*". My Master will never believe what I tell him, he will even doubt what he shall see."

FROM this Embassy of *Matteo Lopez*, the Company, had it lasted, might have gained great Advantages, but it was suppressed some Years after, and the Islands and all its Concessions reunited to the Crown. The *Sanaga* Company, which succeeded in the Trade to *Guinea*, neglected this Settlement, having its particular Reasons for fixing at *Whidah*. We must not omit *Labat's* Remark on this Occasion, that it is the usual Method of the *French*, with regard to their Settlements, they set-out well, but cannot keep long in the same Course^c.

Returns to
Ardrah.

THUS far *Labat*: What follows, we have from *Barbot*. This Author tells us, that the Presents were committed to the Care of *Carlof*; and that *Lopez*, arriving in the Road of *Ardrah* on the first of *October*, 1671, pretended they ought to be put into his Hands, that he might deliver them. This *Carlof* would not consent to, suspecting he would divert some Part to his own Use, as it af-

terwards appeared he had intended. His Refusal so incensed the black Ambassador, that he employed all his Interest in the Country against the *French*, and much distracted their Affairs. This at length obliged *Carlof* to take other Measures, till he could speak with the King of *Ardrah*, who was then busy appeasing a civil War in his own Dominions, which stopped all the Passes for carrying down the Slaves to *Offra*, so that scarce two hundred had arrived thither in fifteen Months: A Thing so prejudicial to the *Dutch* Trade, that five of their Ships were sent back empty to *Mina*.

CARLOF having before driven some Trade at *Great Pops*, settled there a Factory of his Nation, by Permission of the King, upon Condition he should pay the Value of twenty-eight Slaves for each Ship's Cargo the *French* afterwards took in there; whereas he had contracted to pay an hundred at *Offra*. Going from *Pops* to *Whidah*, ^{Where the French withdrew.} the King of that Country gave him a very favourable Reception, with Assurance, that he would always protect the *French* Nation and Interest: Whereupon, removing the Factory from *Ardrah*, he fixed it at *Whidah*, and kept the King his Master's Presents to be sent back to *France*.

ANOTHER Reason for this Remove was, that the Roads from *Sabi* to *Ardrah* were then open, by which Means great Numbers of Slaves were brought-down to *Whidah*; the King of *Ardrah* permitting them to pass through his Territories, in order to punish his rebellious Subjects, he making his own Advantage, while they were deprived of the Slave-Trade at *Offra*^d.

^a *Barbot* says, he went in the Ship *St. George*.
Country, and their grand Monarch.
Description of Guinea, p. 325.

^b Let the *French* alone for crying-up themselves, their
Marchais's Voyage, vol. 2. p. 287, & seq.

^c *Barbot's*

C H A P. IX.

The KINGDOM of Ardrah.

S E C T. I.

The Extent, Soil, and Towns of Ardrah.

Extent of the Country. Air, Soil, and Produce. Roads and Manner of travelling. Towns, Foulson. Torri Country. La Praya. Offra and Jakin. Disagreement of Authors. Grand Foro. Affem, or Azem, the Capital described: The Streets and Houses. King's Palaces and Gardens. Other Towns. Markets.

*Extent of
Ardrah.*

ARDRAH is a large and populous Kingdom, including the Countries which depend on it, but it is not well enough frequented by the Europeans to be certain of its Limits. It is narrow towards the Sea, extending from *Whidah* to *Benin*, but widens considerably Inland. Some make it border West on *Ris de Volta*, and East on *Benin*, including the Kingdoms of *Whidah* on the North Side, and extending North and North-West to *Oye*, a large populous Country, *Ukhami* and other Kingdoms.

BOSMAN (and after him *Barbot*) divides this Country into Great and Little Ardrah. Under Little Ardrah he includes the Part towards the Sea-Coast, extending Inland beyond *Offra*, of which also he gives it the Name. The rest he comprehends under the Name of Great Ardrah. He likewise places a little Territory, called *Tari*, or *Torri*, between *Whidah* and Little Ardrah, of which it seems to be a Part: But this Division must be grounded on the mistaken Notions of Voyagers, who, for want of proper Means of Enquiry, bring home wrong Informations.

*Air, Soil,
and Produce.*

THE Air of this Country in general is extremely unwholesome for Europeans, scarce five out of forty, that go to reside there, escaping Death; which, however, may, in some Measure, be owing to their Intemperance, or not guarding against the Evening Milder: For the Natives are vigorous, and commonly live to a great Age, only the Small-Pox sweeps-away great Numbers of them.

THE Country is all flat and level, and the Soil fertile, much covered with Shrubs, in other

a Places woody, intermixed with pleasant Vales. It produces Abundance of Indian Wheat, Millet, Yams, Potatos, Oranges, Lemons, Coco-Nuts, Palm-Wine, and Salt made in the low, marshy Grounds, which the Inhabitants of *Kurame* Islands come here to load with their Bar-Canoas.

THERE are no Elephants in Ardrah any more than *Whidah*, though in *Bosman's* Time one was killed there, but the Negroes affirmed, the like had not happened in sixty Years before. Hence, b probably, he had strayed from some of the neighbouring Countries Eastward, which are so incredibly over-charged with these Beasts, that it is a Wonder how the Inhabitants dare live there.

THE Kingdom of Ardrah is furnished everywhere with convenient Roads; and small, but very deep, Rivers, fit for conveying Merchandise. Although Horses are numerous about *Affem*, the capital City, they employ them only in mounting the King's Cavalry; for the common Way of travelling here, is in Hamocks carried by Porters, as in *Whidah*. The Europeans likewise are suffered to travel only by Night, to prevent observing the Situation of the Country, unless in Company of the Prince, or some great Men: But then they are carried a great Way about through By-Roads, and never through the Towns.

THE Geography of Ardrah is very imperfect, the Europeans being acquainted with only a few of the Towns, and those near the Sea-Coast. The first that occurs, is *Foulson*. This *Barbot* Town, makes the chief Town of *Tari*, or *Torri*, seated *Foulson*, on the River *Torri*, which runs almost East and West to *Great Pops*. The Natives are chiefly Husbandmen, who sell Provisions to Foreigners, or like their Neighbours of *Great Pops*, live by Plunder. Elsewhere this Author says, *Foulson* is the only Sea-Port Town or Village in *Torri*.

THE Country of *Torri* is a little State, independent of Ardrah, about four Leagues in Circumference, lying between *Whidah* on the West, and Little Ardrah, or *Offra*, on the East. It is washed by the Sea on the South, and is scarce three Leagues distant from the Road of *Whidah*.

^a Doubtless, the same which *Snelgrave* calls *I-o*.

^a The same, p. 347.

same, p. 351.

^c The same, p. 327.

^b *Bosman's* Description of Guinea, p. 243.

^c *Jakin* River; elsewhere called *Tari*, or *Torri*.

^a *Barbot's* Description of Guinea, p. 327, and 346.

^a *Barbot*, as before.

^a *Barbot*, as before, p. 345.

Have-
Coast.
La-Praya.

THE next Place of Note on the Coast, is *La Praya*, by some called *Little Ardrab*, and the Port of *Little Ardrab*. From the Road of *Whidah* hither the Coast runs East about nine Leagues, low, flat Land, in many Places woody; only towards *Praya* the Shore rises somewhat, and has three small Hills near each other on a Kind of Point or Cape. This Point forms the Beginning of a large Bay, which is the proper Anchoring-Place for Ships bound for *Praya*, that lies at the Bottom of the Bay. The River, which runs through the Countries of *Great* and *Little Ardrab*, or *Offra*, and separates the Kingdom of *Benin* from them, runs into this Bay, whose Water is brackish.

PRAYA is known from the Sea, as you come from the West, by four large Thickets of Trees, which appear at a Distance from each other, three Leagues to the West. It is called, by the French and English, the Road of *Ardrab*, the Town being somewhat higher about two hundred Paces from the Strand, on an Extent of six hundred Fathom of Ground.

THE right Road in the Summer Season, that is, from *December* to *April*, is in six Fathom Water, sandy Ground, about three Quarters of a League from the Shore. In the Winter, or high Season, that is, from *May* to *November*, about a League and an half from the Land, in eight or nine Fathom.

THE Bay before the Port is very shallow, which increases the Violence of the Surge. In the Summer Season the Air is clear, and tolerably wholesome.

Offra and
Jakin.

THE Town of *Offra* lies Inland about seven English Miles from that of *Praya*. The English and Dutch Factors have each a fine House here, the latter especially driving a great Trade in Slaves.

THE Town of *Jakin* stands between *Offra* and *Little Ardrab*, (or *Praya*) and is so called from a Black who resided there formerly. It is situated on a Rivulet, and takes-up one thousand five hundred Fathom of Ground, being inclosed with a thick, solid Mud-Wall. The Governor's House is tolerable, made of Clay.

BOSMAN says, the Land of *Jakin* lies four or five Leagues to the East of *Whidah*, and is subject to *Great Ardrab*, whose *Fidalga* governs there.

WITH regard to the Territory of *Offra*, called *Little Ardrab* by Europeans, he observes, that it lies a little lower, but farther Inland than *Jakin*. He adds, that the Dutch Company many Years ago had a Lodge, and drove a considerable Trade; but that they have not been there since their Factor was killed, and the Land wasted by the *Pope-Blacks*: That the Country also had mostly lain wild and untilled for several Years, and was likely to continue so many Years longer: For that the Kings of *Great Ardrab* and *Whidah* were striving for the Mastery of it.

Ardrab Kingdom.

THE Accounts of these, as well as other *Au-Disgrace* thors, are very confused and uncertain. *Jakin*, ^{name of the town} according to our Map, lies on the River of that Name, (which seems to be the *Tari*, or *Tari*) about a Mile to the North-East of *Offra*, and seven from the Sea: But Mr. Smith, in his Map of *Guinea*, places it on the Shore, giving to *La Praya* (as is usual) the Name of the Place to which it is the Port. This is confirmed by *Snelgrave*, who says he anchored at *Jakin*, and landing, next Day, went-up to the Town, which he reckons to be about three Miles from the Sea, and places on the South Side of the River. The English and Dutch have Factories here, but at present that of the English is withdrawn. In the same Author's Time *Jakin* had a King, but being ruined in 1732 by the *Dahomies*, the King and chief Men fled in Canoes to an Island he had fortified in the Middle of the River towards *Appab*, ten Leagues to the East.

ANOTHER half Way between *Offra* and *Assen* ^{Grand Fera} lies *Grand Fera*, a large Village mentioned in *d'Elbri's* Journey to the King of *Ardrab's* Court. It is called, by the Dutch, *Playster Plaats*, and has a Kind of Inn for accommodating Travellers.

ASSEM, or *Azem*, as the Blacks, and *Great Assen*, ^{or Azem} *Ardrab*, as the Europeans, commonly call it, is the usual Residence of the King of *Ardrab*. It lies sixteen Leagues Inland to the North-West from *Little Ardrab*, a spacious Road leading from the one to the other. The Blacks say, this Town is nine English Miles in Compass, the Streets being extraordinary wide, and the Houses built separate from each other, to prevent Fires.

THE *Sieur d'Elbri*, who was there in 1669, ^{Displeased} observed, that he passed four great Gates; and that the Walls of the Town, though only of Earth,

^a This Author generally calls it *Little Ardrab*; which, to prevent Confusion, we avoid.

^b It is called, by the English, *Jakin Road*, and *Jakin*.

^c *Barber's Description of Guinea*, p. 345, & seq.

^d See before, p. 401. a. and d.

^e *Snelgrave's Voyage*, p. 13, and 92.

^f Country extends as far as the Bay of *Benin*. *Snelgrave*, as before, p. 403.

^g See before, p. 68. b.

^h *Barbut*, as before, p. 345, & seq.

ⁱ In the Road to *Assen*, or *Azem*, chief Town of *Ardrab*.

^j *Barbut's Description of Guinea*, p. 308.

^k The King of *Appab*.

^l *Barbut* writes, *Grand Fera*.

^m These must have been Gates to

Steven-
Cast.

were very broad and high. This Earth or Clay is of a reddish Colour, and binds well, being as smooth and firm as Plaster, though they mix no Lime with it. The Gates are not opposite to each other. Each Wall has a large deep Ditch, but contrary to the *European* Way, these Ditches are within-Side the Wall. They passed these Ditches on slight Bridges, which might be, on Occasion, soon removed or broken. The Side-Polls of their Gates were large Stakes well-pointed. Over each Gate was a Chamber for the Porter; and on each Side, within, Galleries, which served for Guard-Houses, where Soldiers, armed with Sabres and Muskets, drew-up in a Line as the *Sieur d'Elbe* passed. Between each Ditch and Wall there was a broad Space, which served for a Way to reach from one Gate and Bridge to another. The Walls were built with the Earth taken-out of the Ditches. The Water-Passages were covered within and without with several Ox-Hides laid on each other, fastened with Nails; that being sufficient in this Country to resist the Strokes of a Hatchet, which might be used to break them open.

Brown and
Hog.

ONE Half of *Assen* is surrounded by the *Eufrates*, which serves it for a Ditch. The Wall on this Side is single, and neither so high nor thick as the rest. The Town has but one Gate, though it is of prodigious Extent: Nor can it well be otherwise, each Family taking-up a great deal of Ground. It has this Advantage of *Xavier*, (or *Saki*) that the Buildings are more regular, and laid-out into Streets, which are kept clean, and have neither Pits nor other Inconveniences; and though few Women are seen in them, yet they are crowded with People.

BARBOT says, the Houses are all of a fat Clay, the Walls or Shells commonly about three Foot thick, and covered with Straw, and not much better furnished than those of other Parts of *Guinea*, that is, only with such Utensils or Goods as are of absolute Necessity. The King's Houses are in that Respect no richer than the rest, only he has some Damask Elbow-Chairs, formerly presented him by *Europeans*.

King's Pa-
lacc.

THE Palace is of great Extent, consisting of large Courts, surrounded with Porticoes, over which lie the Apartments. The Windows are small and narrow, on account of the Heat of the Climate. In some Rooms there were large *Turkey* Carpets, which covered the Floors, in others only Mats. In each Chamber was a single Arm-Chair, with a great Number of Cushions covered with Silk or Brocade. There were Tables, folding Screens, *India* and *Japan* Cabinets, and Chests

with fine China. The Windows had no Glass, but only Sashes of white Cloth, with Window-Curtains of Taffety.

Ardrab
Kingdom.

THE Gardens were spacious, laid-out into long, strait Alleys, formed of thick, bushy Trees of different Kinds, both for Shade and Fruit. In some Places were Compartments, or Knots, edged with Thyme, and full of Flowers. Amongst these were Lilies of three Colours, the Leaves of which were longer and thinner than those of *Europe*, and their Smell more agreeable and less strong.

ACCORDING to *Barlet*, the King has two large Palaces in the Town, in one of which he resides, the other being kept empty in Readiness to remove to, in case of Fire. He adds, that both of them are inclosed with a Sort of Rampart of Earth five Foot thick, like that which surrounds the Town. The Buildings are of Clay, covered with Straw, divided into several Apartments. These Palaces contain several Courts and Gardens, with long and wide Galleries round the Buildings, supported by handsome Pillars, under which People walk. The Buildings are two Stories high, with Rooms, &c. The Gardens are walled about, divided into large Walks of green Trees and Grass-Plats, with Beds of Flowers, especially three Sorts of Lilies. In that general Destruction, which overwhelmed *Ardrab*, after its Conquest by the King of *Dehomed* in 1724, the Town of *Assen* was levelled to the Ground.

ARDRAH has many Towns and Villages, like the Capital, surrounded with Mud-Walls. Amongst these are those of *Jays* and *Ba*: The former three Days Journey from *Jahin*, the latter two Miles beyond *Jays*, having two Gates on the South Side, and on the North a River that comes from *Bmin*. The *Dutch* have a Factory at *Ba*.

THE other Towns and Villages of *Ardrab*, not inclosed, are situated in Places of natural Strength.

THEY have many public Markets through all the Country: Particularly at *Ba* there is one every four Days for Salt, which they send from *Jays* and *Ba* in Cansos to the *Ukani* Country, from whence it is transported Inland to Places more remote.

ABOUT five or six Leagues from *Ba* stands a lofty Tree in a Plain, under and about which is kept a great Market at certain Times of the Year; to which resort, from all Parts, three or four thousand Merchants, with all Sorts of *African* Goods.

* *Pontoux*.Description of *Guinea*, p. 347.* *Marchais's Voy. en Guinée*, vol. 2. p. 247.* *Marchais*, as before, p. 250.

* The same, p. 253.

* *Barlet's*

p. 345.

* *Barlet*, as before, p. 346.

SECT. II.

The Inhabitants, their Dress, Marriages,
Trade, &c.

Dress of the Natives. Their Diet. Marriages; Adultery punished. Employment. Language. Burials. Commodities imported. Goods proper for Importation. Commerce, how carried-on. Duties and Licence for Trading. Stock-via b
Dorp.

a turns four, and is not fit to transport from Place to Place.

THE Men take Wives at Pleasure here as in *Whidah*, and other Parts of *Guinea*. The King's chief Wife has the Title of *Queen*, with this Prerogative, that in case his Majesty denies her any thing she has Occasion for, she may sell some of his other Wives to supply her Wants, as hath often been the Case. Most of the *Ardrab* Gentry marry young Women of Quality, not above eight or ten Years old, but do not consummate the Marriage till they have kept them some Years in the Nature of Servants, stark naked; and when they have fixed the Time for cohabiting, they then clothe them with a Piece of Cloth, or a short Frock.

THEIR Marriages are concluded without any farther Ceremony, than the mutual Consent of the Parents on both Sides: Only the Bridegroom commonly presents his Bride with two or three Cloths, and must treat the Parents, and invited Friends, with eight or ten Pots of *Pitta*, or Beer; and then declares to all the Company, that he takes the Woman in Quality of first or chief Wives. As they have no Regard to Birth or Fortune here, the meanest Man may pretend to a Woman of greatest Quality.

THE *Ardrab* Women generally are not very fruitful, and it is rare to find one that has had three or four Children. The Wives of Men of Quality are always very respectful, and silent in their Presence. When their Husbands command them to appear before a Foreigner, they commonly sit-down all together on Mats at one End of the Room; and if ordered so to do, they will freely sing, beating Time methodically with two little Sticks on a small Bell, the most usual musical Instrument among them. If a Woman happens to be delivered of Twins, they conclude she must be guilty of Adultery, believing it impossible for her to have two Children at once by one Man.

THE Women here, like all the rest on these hot Coasts, are addicted to Venery; nor are deterred by the Punishment of Slavery from gratifying their Inclination for Strangers, whenever they can meet with an Opportunity. They always affect to appear wanton and lascivious, even in their Gestures and Carriage. The Men too, notwithstanding their great Number of Women, will hunt after other Mens Wives or Daughters: f However, those of the upper Rank are somewhat more reserved in this Respect; and very careful to keep their Wives from being seen by their Countrymen, and even by the *Europeans*, excepting such as they esteem, and know to be modest.

THE Inhabitants near the Sea-Side employ themselves altogether in fishing, boiling of Salt,

Inhabitants, their Dress. THE People of *Ardrab* differ but little from those of *Whidah* in their Manners, Politics, and Religion. Their Dress consists of five or six valuable Cloths, made in the Country, thrown one over the other. Some of them are enriched with Gold Thread, either platted or woven-in, which looks very fine.

THE Gentry and others of the prime Sort have commonly a short Cloak on their Shoulders, and under it Silk, or *Indian* Cloths, wrapped about them, with fine white Calico Shirts made there.

THE King of *Ardrab* usually has on two Petticoats (as it were) one longer than the other, after the *Persian* Fashion; and sometimes a Silk Scarf, Belt-wise, with a Sort of laced Collar hanging-down on his Back, and under it a little Crown of black Wood, that casts a very sweet Scent; holding in one Hand a Sort of Whip, the Handle whereof is curiously fashioned.

THE Females there exceed the Males in their Dress: Those of some Distinction commonly wear fine painted *Indian* Calicos, white *China* Saracens, with rich Silk and Linen Wrappers.

BOTH Sexes are very careful to wash their Bodies Morning and Evening, in clean, pure Water, and to anoint them with Civet; especially married Women, who are very studious to please their Husbands, knowing them to be extremely luxurious.

Their Diet. THE Natives of *Ardrab* prepare their Corn for Bread as they do on the *Gold-Coast*, either in Cakes, or *Kankis*. They either roast their Yams on Coals, or boil them with Butter, which they know how to churn. They use Rice for common Food, and Pulse, Herbs, and Roots, with Beef, Mutton, and Dog's Flesh; likewise Fowl dressed in Rice, and call all such Eatables *Kade* indifferently.

THEIR ordinary Drink is the Beer *Pissu* as on the *Gold-Coast*. *Fere* and *Offra* have the best Sort. This Beer being mixed with Water, and moderately used, is pretty good Drink, but by itself is dangerous, and will occasion excessive Gripings. Another bad Quality of it is, it soon

* *Barbier's Description of Guinea*, p. 247, taken chiefly from *Dapper*. See *Osby's Africa*, p. 465, & *See*

Slave-
Coast.

and trading; and the inland People in Husbandry, tilling the Ground by Strength of Arms, the same Way as those of *Whidah* do it, which is very laborious and hard Work.

Language.

As to their Language, they chuse to speak the *Ullanni*, which they prefer to their own, as being, in their Opinion, far more elegant and agreeable.

Burial.

They differ little from the *Gold-Coast* Blacks in the Manner of interring their Dead, except in this Particular, that there the Deceased's Relations furnish the Cloth for Shrouds to wrap the Corps in, and here the Governor of the Place does it; and that they commonly bury the dead Person in the House he inhabited, in a Vault built for that Purpose. These Burials are commonly performed with little or no Pomp and Ceremony, but rather privately; only upon the Death of the King, three Months after his Funeral they murder some Slaves, and bury them near him.

Commodities
Exported.

The *Europeans* are commonly treated with great Civility, and there is great Variety of Refreshments at a very cheap Rate; as, a Barrel of fresh Water, and a Load of Wood for Fuel, for two Brass Rings; for a Chest of Salt, four; and for a Pot of Beer, one. And those Rings they reduce into Hens; four of them there, called a *Yellow*, being five Hens.

Some of the Slaves purchased here are brought as Contributions from the neighbouring Nations, or sold by their own Parents or Relations.

The *Dutch* drive a considerable Trade at *Arabo*; and next to them, the *English*, having Factories or Lodges at *Praya* and *Offra*; exporting thence Slaves, Cotton Cloths, and Mue Stones, called *Aigri*, or *Akari*, very valuable on the *Gold-Coast*.

Commodities
Imported.

The best Commodity the *Europeans* can carry thither, is *Bijju*, or *Kauri*, which are the current Coin; paying for Slaves half in this Money, and half in Goods; except *Billi* are sent in *Europe*, and then a third or fourth Part must serve.

The most acceptable Things next to these, are flat Iron Bars, (for the round or square will not do;) fine long Coral, *China* Sarcenets, gilt Leather, white and red Damask; red Cloth, with large Lills; Copper Bowls or Cups, Brass Rings, *Venice* Beads, or Bugles of several Colours; Agates, gilded Looking-Glasses, *Leyden* Serges, *Statilles* Linen, *Morees*, *Salampores*, red Chintz, broad and narrow Tapies, blue Kanekins, broad and narrow Gunee, (a Sort of Linen) double Kanekins, *French* Brandy, *Canary* and *Malmsey*, black *Caudiber* Hats, *Italian* Taffeties, white or

red, Cloth of Gold or Silver; *Dutch* Knives, called *Beswans*; *Armoizins*, striped with white and flowered; Gold and Silver Brocadel; Firelocks, Muskets, Gunpowder; large Beads from *Rosen*, white flowered Sarcenets, *Indian* *Armoizins*, Damask Napkins, large Coral Earrings, Cutlasses, gilded and broad; Silk Scarfs, large Umbrellas, Pieces of Eight, long pyramidal Bells. The same Sorts of Goods are proper for Trade as far as the *River Gabon*.

Arabian
Kingdom.

The Commerce is here adjusted with the *Trade*, *how* King, in the same Manner as at *Whidah*. As *soon as* a Ship arrives, the Commander or Super-cargo must wait on the Governor of *Praya*, to be conducted to the King, taking along with him the usual Presents, which commonly consist in a Parcel of about three or four Pound Weight of fine Coral, six *Cyprus* Cloths, three Pieces of *Morees*, and one Piece of Damask, for the King; another Parcel of Coral for the Queen; a Piece of Damask Napkins for the Prince; one Piece of *Armoizin* for the *Fallo*, or Captain of the Whites; another for the Porters of the Court; another for the Courtiers, or else some Beads, or great Brass Rings; ten *Galinhas* of *Bajis* for Dancers (twelve or fifteen hundred armed Men commonly attending for that Purpose at the Water-Side) or the Value thereof in other Things. From the Water-Side they are accompanied to *Aflem* by the Governor, or principal Officers, with a fine Retinue, and Hamocks, each Porter to have four Brass Rings a-Day, besides Subsistence; and but one Ring, if the Goods be for the King.

It is usual for *Europeans* to give the King the *Duties* and Value of fifty Slaves in Goods, for his Permission *to* trade, and Customs for each Ship; and to the King's Son the Value of two Slaves, for the Privilege of Watering; and four Slaves for Wooding, in case it be wanted; otherwise those Duties are not paid.

The *Hengo*, or Captain of the Bar, is commonly paid, for every twelve Trips of a *Barcanoa* from or to a Ship, one Slave in Goods: For this he is obliged to attend at the Beach, with his Men, all the while, in order to quicken his *Canoe*-Rowers, and give all necessary Assistance in bringing the Goods ashore, the Bar here being very dangerous.

No *Europeans* can trade here, for Slaves, *Ay-gros*, or *Blue-Stones*, till Licence be proclaimed, as at *Whidah*, by a public Crier; who is to be paid for his Trouble, by the Factor or Super-cargo, forty Brass Rings, twenty Hens, one Goat, a Piece of Kanekin, and a Piece of

* *Barbot's Description of Guinea*, p. 118.

* The same, p. 118, and 121.

* The same, p. 152.

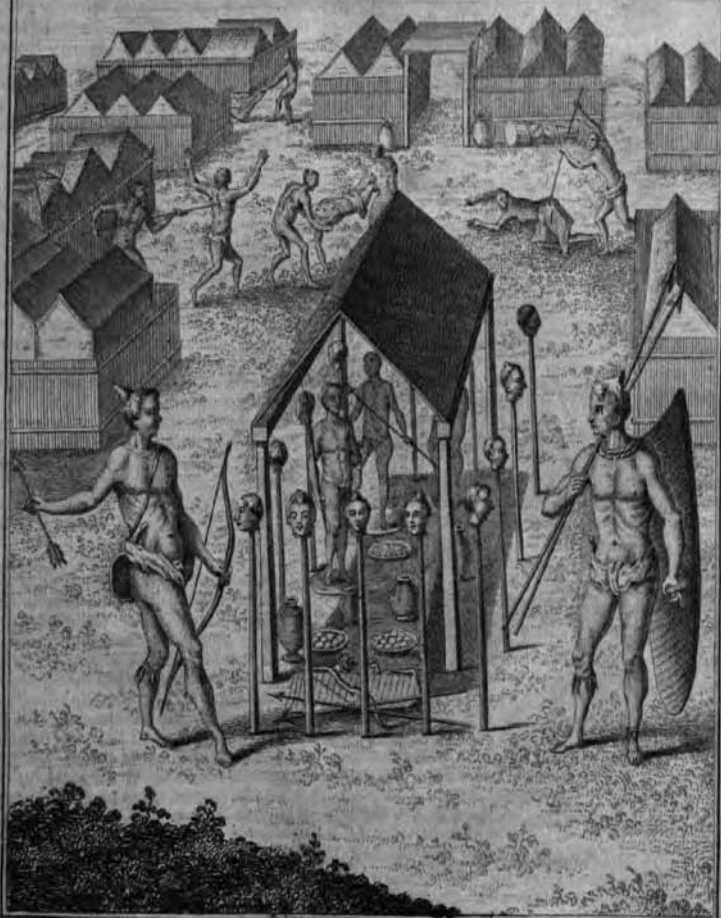
† This Author, p. 150, says, the *Dutch* bear a high Hand over the *English*, and export three thousand Slaves yearly.

‡ In the Original, *Great Adah*, the Name used by *Europeans*.

§ See before, p. 10. b.

short.

Sepulture of Kings in Guinea, from
de Bry.



Slave-
Coast.
Stock-vi-
Dorp.

short, or little Armoizin. He is accompanied back in the same Order, to a Village called by the Dutch, *Stock-vi Dorp*, about four Miles South South-West of *Proya*; where a House being appointed for him to drive his Trade in, he causes all his Cargo to be brought thither, and thence sends up to *Affem* the King's Goods.

AFTER this, the great Captain of Commerce, called the *Foella*, is to take his Choice of the Cargo; but as the Factor has several Merchants, and others, to please, who give a better Price than either the King or the *Foella*, he rarely gives them a true Invoice of the best Goods.

THE Measure for *Bijij*, and Way of accounting by knotted Cords, is the same here as at *Whidah*.

THE Factor, or Supercargo, having finished his Sale, is to present the King again with two Muskets, twenty-five Pounds of Powder, and the Value of nine Slaves in other Goods, as an Acknowledgment to that Prince for his Favour, in granting him the Permission to trade in his Dominions. He must also, on the same Account, present the *Foella* with one Piece of Armoizin; the *Hanga*, or Captain of the Bar, with another Piece, and some other inferior Officers with another Piece among them: So that all those Customs and Duties together, amount to the Value of seventy, seventy-five, or eighty Slaves, in Goods, for each trading Ship; whereas, at *Whidah*, they do not exceed thirty-two or thirty-five*.

SECT. III.

Religion, Government, and Forces.

Their Idea of God: Mortality of the Soul. Fetich, or Image-Worship. High Priest, Royal Fetiches. Laws and Penalties. The King. Audience of Europeans. His State and Power. Weapons and Colours. Drums and Bells. Ardrah over-run. Cruel Slaughter by the Oyos, or I-ors: Destroyed by the Dahomays: Their Nation of God.

Their Idea
of God.

THERE are some few Particulars in which the Religion of *Ardrab* differs from that of *Whidah*. These chiefly depend on the Fancy and Direction of their Priests, of which there is a vast Number, every wealthy Person keeping one as his Chaplain.

MOST of these Blacks, though gross Idola-

ters, or Image-Worshippers, acknowledge a supreme Being, who, they believe, appoints the Time when every Person shall come into, or go out of this World, and of all other Events in Life: Yet they are shocked at every cross Accident, and tremble at the very Name of Death.

Ardrab
Religion.

THEY believe the Soul to be mortal, and annihilated after Death, the Flesh putrifying, and the Blood congealing: Only to infuse Courage into the Soldiers, they politely exempt those who serve their Country in the Army, and are killed in Fight; affirming, that they do not lie above two Days in the Grave, but return to Life again, yet with other Features and Lineaments, which render them unknown to their Friends and Acquaintance.

THIS Opinion is inculcated by the Priests, who forge a thousand Stories upon the Occasion; and as they usually attend the Army in the Field, as the *Hebrew Levites* and Priests did^b, are very careful to bury, in the Night-Time, such as have been slain in Fight, pretending afterwards, that they are risen again from their Graves, and that they have seen them full of Life.

EACH Person has his peculiar *Fetich*, of the same Kinds as in *Whidah*, and gives the same Reason for the Worship of his Image, which he keeps hid in his House under a large earthen Pot; and every six Months, the Head of the Family makes a public Offering, and puts several Questions to the Idol, according to his Occasions. If the Priest thinks the Offering too small, he tells the Party, that the *Fetich* does not like it, and will not answer his Queries till he has one to please him. Upon this, a Dog, a Goat, or some more Hens, are sacrificed, and then the Answer is delivered by the Priest in a low Voice; which those stupid Blacks believe to be effected by some secret Impulse of the *Fetich*. The Oracle thus delivered, the Priest covers the Idol with the Pot, and sprinkles it either with Beer or Meal. The like is done by the Friends and Neighbours present at the Sacrifice.

If a Person be sick, the Priest must come and sacrifice some Animal for the Patient's Recovery. He rubs the *Fetich* with the Blood, and throws away the Flesh.

THE Priests in general are highly revered, and the chief Pontiff almost adored by the People; who believe him to be an eminent Diviner, and that he can foretell Things, by conversing with an awkward Image, which stands in his

* *Norbot's Description of Guinea*, p. 348, & *seq.* See also *Ogilby's Africa*, p. 459.
Bonobah, Son of *Yehuda*, was one of the mighty Men of David. 2 Sam. xxiii. 29.
super than the Whites in most Parts of Europe?

^b The Priest
Are they more

Slave-
Coast.

Hall where he gives Audience and receives Visits. This Image is as big as a Child of four Years old, and painted white: For they say the Devil is of this Colour; and that not a Ship arrives on the *Ardrab* Coast, from *Europe*, but what he reveals to the great Priest ^a six Months before. They also believe, like the *Gald-Croft* Negroes, that the Devil beats them cruelly; at least, they howl and cry-out in the Night as they do ^b.

SNELGRAVE observes, as an Argument of the great Regard paid the Priesthood, that although, by the Law, it is Death, at *Jakin*, to a Family in whose House a Fire begins near the Court, and the Duke's House was actually consumed, while the Author was there, by a Fire which began in the *Feisibir's* House, that was not far off it, yet he declined inquiring into the Cause of it ^c.

Royal Ve-
stibul.

The same Author informs us, that the Lord of *Jakin's Fetish* stood in the Middle of a large square Court, set round with handsome Trees. It was made in the Fashion of a large Haycock, and covered over with Thatch. On the Top of this was placed a dead Man's Skull, before which Offerings were made for the Duke's Health and Preservation ^d.

It appears from *Phillips's*, that the *Fetish* of the King of *Ardrab* is a Crocodile: But *d'Ellet* says, it is a Bird like a Crow ^e.

Laws and
Punishments.

In *Ardrab*, a Person who dares disobey the King's Commands is beheaded, and his Wives and Children become the King's Slaves.

INSOLVENT Debtors are left to the Mercy of their Creditors, who, if they will, may sell them to pay themselves. The same Punishment is inflicted on him who has debauched another Man's Wife. As for adulterous Females, if a Woman lies with a Man Slave, she becomes a Slave to the Slave's Master, if he be of higher Rank than the offended Husband; but if the Husband is of a higher Condition, the Slave is to be slave to him for ever. The Punishments for other Crimes are the same as at *Whidah* ^f.

The King.

THE King is styled King of *Ardrab* and *Alghem* ^g. King *Alkeni*, or *Tazi* ^h, would never permit the *Dutch* to build a Fort in his Dominions, allying the same Reasons, according to *Barbot*, upon which, *d'Ellet* informs us, he refused the *French*.

He who reigned when the former of these Authors was in *Ardrab*, was Son to that *Tazi*, and much respected by the whole Nation. He

was entirely absolute, and approached with the same Submission as the King of *Whidah*; the chief Priest only having the Privilege of standing, and discoursing him in that Posture. He is the second Person in the Country, and the King's chief Minister, both in Temporals and Spirituals.

Anrah
Government.

EVERY Subject pays him a heavy Capitation, as well as Foreigners residing in his Dominions. He has a numerous Court, and every Officer whatsoever is called Captain, according to the Post he is in. The King's Steward is called *Captain Table*; the Purveyor General, *Captain Meat*; the great Butler, *Captain Wine*, and so of the others; as is practised among the black Nations at *Cape Verde*.

WHITE Men, who travel to *Assem* to have an Audience of the King, are lodged in the Palace, each according to the Nation he belongs to, and there very handsomely subsisted, at the King's Charge, till the Time of the Audience.

THE Captains of Commerce, and of the Cavalry, are usually Introducers of the Whites to the Audience of the King; who commonly advances some Steps to the *European*, takes him by the Hand, presses it in his own, and three Times successively touches his fore-Finger, which is there a Token of Amity and Friendship. After this, he bids him sit-down by his Side, on neat Mats spread on the Floor. The Foreigner then lays his Presents before the King, and, by the ordinary Interpreter, declares what it is he desires of his Majesty, who returns an Answer by the same Canal.

THE Audience being over, he is next conducted to the Prince, who usually resides at a large Town, enclosed with Walls, about two *English* Miles from the Capital; and there introduced, and treated much after the same Manner as he was at *Assem*.

THENCE he goes to the great Priest's, who is a tall, well-set Man, and entertains Foreigners very nobly. Here they sit, after the *Turkish* Fashion, on fine Silk Cushions, placed on extraordinary curious Mats. The Ecclesiastic, after Dinner, commonly sends for his Wives, (being about eighty in Number) who, in a Kind of Parlour, or Hall, dance and sing before their Guests, to the Noise of their musical Instruments.

THE King and Prince never appear abroad without a great Retinue, and Soldiers armed with

His State
and Power.

^a *Barbot* calls him the *Marabou*, like *Lahar*, and seems to have taken all this from *d'Ellet's* Relation. See before, p. 70. ^b *Barbot's* Description of *Guinea*, p. 352, 353.

^c See before, p. 503.

^d See before, p. 123.

^e See before, p. 61. b.

^f See before, *Lopez's* Voyage, p. 76. c.

^g See before, p. 69. b.

^h See before, p. 72.

ⁱ Called, in *d'Ellet's* Voyage,

Slave-
Coast.

Firelocks. The Master of the Horse generally walks first, with his Head covered, and a Simetar in one Hand; the King follows, for the most Part leaning on the Shoulders of two Officers, with the great Captain, or General of the Horse, on his Right, and the Captain of Commerce on his Left, all the other Courtiers and Gentry crowding about him.

THE King of *Ardrab* can soon, upon Occasion, form an Army of forty thousand Horse and Foot, or more: Nothing but too much Youth or Age can exempt the Subject from repairing to the Field, when commanded to go.

Weapons and
Colours.

THE Soldiers near the Coast are commonly armed with Muskets and Simetars, or Swords: But more within Land they use Bows and Arrows, Hangers, Javelins, and wooden Clubs; all which Arms are very fine, and of their own making. Although they are lusty Men, they are great Cowards, like the Blacks of *Whidah*.

It is the Custom here to keep solemn Feasts and Anniversaries, to commemorate their Victories, though of small Importance.

In their warlike Expeditions, they carry a Sort of Staves, or Poles, bowed at both Ends, in the Figure of an S; at one Extremity, they display a small Standard, with which they make Abundance of Motions. On their long Drums, sharp-pointed at one End, they beat a Kind of Measure: Others beat with Sticks on a Sort of tinkling Bells, at the Sound of which, the Soldiers make an hundred ridiculous Motions with their Bodies. The same Sort of musical Instrument is also much used in their Festivals and Diversions.

Drums and
Bells.

THEY have likewise vocal Musicians, Tale-tellers, and Buffoons, to divert and animate the Soldiers in the Field; and the Cavalry has small short Trumpets, which join in the Chorus, but all will not do.

BOSMAN observes, that the King of *Great Ardrab*, with all his dependent Countries, is twenty Times as strong as he of *Whidah*, yet has not the Courage to make War against him, though they live in perpetual Enmity.

Ardrab
over-ruled.

FARTHER inland are yet more potent Kingdoms; but the Author knew very little of them, farther than that, while he was there, Embassadors from one of them came to advertise the King of *Ardrab*, that several of his Subjects had been to complain to his Master, and warn him to take Care, that his Vice-Roys treated those

a poor Men more gently; otherwise, he gave him to understand, that, much against his Will, he should be obliged to come to their Assistance and Protection.

Ardrab
Government.

THE King of *Ardrab* not only laughed at this, but farther to show his Contempt for that King, murdered his Ambassador. Upon this, the inland Monarch, with an Army of a Million of Horse, (including the *Whidah* Auxiliaries) over-ran half the King of *Ardrab*'s Territories; and made such a Slaughter, that the Dead, as they expressed it, were like the Grains of Corn in the Field. This was confirmed to *Bosman* by Oaths. After such Havock made, the General returned home, expecting to be well received by his Master, but found himself mistaken: For the King ordered him to be hanged on a Tree, because, contrary to his Commands, he had not brought the Person of the King of *Great Ardrab* with him, on whom, and not on his Subjects, he aimed his Revenge.

THIS Nation strikes such a Terror round, that their Neighbours can scarce hear them mentioned without trembling; and the *Whidah* Blacks tell a thousand strange Things: Among the rest, they assured the Author, that it was customary, in their Wars, to cut-off the Privities of the Slain; and that none durst presume to take an Enemy Prisoner, that was not furnished with an hundred of these Trophies.

BARBOT supposes, that the inland Nation above-mentioned, were the *Oyds* and *Ulkami*. These *Oyds* are doubtless the *I-n* mentioned by *Snelgrave*, whose *Fetich*, as the *Dahomays* informed him, was the Sea. For this Reason, they were prohibited by their Priests from ever seeing it, under Pretence, that their God would slay them for their Presumption. This he learned from a Mulatto Portuguese Gentleman, who had been a Prisoner in the Court of *Dahomé*.

OF late Years the *Dahomay* Blacks have been the greatest Enemies to those of *Ardrab*, which was destroyed by them as hath been before observed. Of these *Dahomays* we find scarce any Account in Authors, but what relates to their Conquests and Cruelties. *Snelgrave* informs us, that their King sacrificed four thousand *Whidah* Negroes to his God, as an Acknowledgment of the Conquest obtained over them. Likewise some handsome, young Captives of the *Tuffer*, in order to attend, in the other World, his Majesty's Wives, whom their Countrymen had slain.

Destroyed by
the Dahomays.

* *Barbot* here charges the Blacks of *Ardrab* with Want of Courage, Commanders and Discipline, in the same Manner as *Eysma* has done those of *Whidah*.

Yet *Adrian Gys*, p. 117, that he is a potent and warlike Prince.

p. 397, & seq.

Snelgrave's Voyage, p. 59.

* *Barbot*, as before, p. 352.

* The same, p. 48.

* *Barbot's Description of Guinea*, p. 350, & seq.

* *Bosman's Description of Guinea*.

(See before, Vol. II. p. 501.)

*Deity Nature
of God*

THEIR Manner of sacrificing the Victims, a extraordinary Things to white Men, as Mr. and Reason for it, has been already described *. With regard to this Deity †, the *Dahomays* esteemed him as an invisible Guardian Angel, subordinate to another God; which a Colonel, belonging to their Army, said, might perhaps be the *English* God, who had communicated so many

Lambe ‡ had informed him: But as that God had not been pleased to make himself known to them, they must be satisfied with this they worshipped §. It was observable, that the King could not be seen upon Business on his *Fetich-Day* ¶.

B O O K II.

VOYAGES and TRAVELS to GUINEA and BENIN.

C O N T A I N I N G

A DESCRIPTION of BENIN, and the Coast as far as KONGO.

C H A P. I.

An ACCOUNT of the Kingdom of Benin.

I N T R O D U C T I O N.

ALTHOUGH the Public is furnished b with several Voyages to *Benin*, yet we meet with only two or three Authors who give any particular Account of the Country and its Inhabitants: The chief of these are *Gatard Artus*, or *Arthus*, of *Dantzick*, and *David Van Nyendael*.

*Artus of
Dantzick.*

THE first of these is to be found in the second Volume of *de Bry's* Collection, making the sixth Part of his *Indio Orientalis*. It is intitled, *A True and Historical Description of the Gold-Coast*, and contains an hundred and twenty-seven Pages, Folio, besides the Cuts, which take-up twenty-six more. But it must be observed here, that this is not the Work of *Artus*, but of a *Dutchman*, who made the Voyage to the *Gold-Coast*, and was an Eye-Witness of all he relates. It was first written in *Low Dutch*, then translated into the *German*, and afterwards into *Latin* by *Artus*. This is all we learn worth taking Notice of here from the two Dedications of *de Bry's* d

to the Bishop of *Mentz*, consisting of four Pages; and as the Description is anonymous, we have mentioned it under the Name of *Artus* for Distinction Sake, and the more easy quoting of it.

THIS Description is divided into twenty-seven *Chapters*. The Author introduces it with a *Account of the Work*. Voyage performed, in 1600, by two Ships from the *Texel* to *el Mina*; wherein a particular Account is given of the Coast in the three first Chapters, comprizing eight Pages. After this he enters upon the Manners and Customs of the *Gold-Coast* Negroes: From thence he proceeds to the natural History of the Country in its several Branches; and ends with an ample Account of *el Mina*, and the Government of the *Portuguese* there. These Matters take-up fifty Chapters. The fifty-fourth contains a Voyage from *Mowri* to *Benin* and the *Ris Forcados*. The fifty-fifth describes the City of *Benin*; and the two following Chapters the Coast as far as *Cape Lope Gansalvo*.

* See before, Vol. II. p. 493. & seq.
Account of this *Lambe* before, Vol. II. p. 489.
same, p. 76.

† This could be only some *Fetich*.

‡ *Duclgrave's* Voyage, p. 37, and 48.

§ There is an
* The

As we have laid before our Readers the Substance of this Tract in the present Work, it would be needless to enlarge farther in a literary Account of it.

THE CUTS belonging to it (uncertain whether the actual Draughts of the Author, or the Imagination of *de Bry*) are as follows:

1. Three Gold-Coast Negroes.
2. Different Drefs of the Women.
3. Drefs of the Men.
4. Cape Cerfe Market.
5. Religious Ceremonies.
6. Three Warriors armed.
7. Trials and Punifments.
8. Way of trading on the Coast.
9. Way of fifhing in the Day.
10. Fifhing by Night.
11. Cattle, and tame Animals.
12. Hunting of wild Beasts.
13. Various Kinds of wild Beasts.
14. Agriculture and Fruit-Trees.
15. Their Houfes and Furniture.
16. Creation of Noblemen.
17. Different Drefs of Women.
18. Their Funeral Ceremonies.
19. King, at Cape Lope *Ganfalus*, giving Audience.
20. Natives of Cape Lope *Ganfalus*.
21. Way of fighting on the Gold-Coast.
22. Burial of their Kings.
23. Houfes in the City of Benin.
24. The Castle of *Mina*.
25. Island of *St. Thomas*.
26. Busts of Men and Women in Benin.

At the Bottom of each Cut, there is an Explanation of the Figures, according to the Method of *de Bry*. *Barbot* has, in his Description of *Guinea*, inserted thofe marked with a Star: But they are badly copied; and, what is worfe, are given under different Denominations from the Originals.

THE Tract of *Nyendaël*, our fecond Author, is inferted by *Bafman*, in his Description of the *Gold-Coaft*, p. 423. It contains forty-fix Pages, and makes the twenty-first Letter in that Book, under the Title of, *A Description of Rio Formofa, or the River of Benin*. There is little more to be faid upon this Occafion, than that *Nyendaël* failed thither from the Port of Little *Ardrab*, or *Proya*, in the *Yboanna Maria* Yacht, from whence his Letter to *Bafman* is dated September the firft, 1702.

To the two former Authors, we might add *Dapper* and *Barbot*: But thefe are a Kind of Geographical Hiftorians, whole Works are compiled from the Observations of others; and though the latter had made the Voyage to *Guinea*. Vol. III. N° LXXXV.

yet he is rather to be confidered as a Collector of other People's Remarks, than a Relator of his own: At leaft, with refpect to the Account he has published of *Benin*, he is merely a Collector, having compofed it almoft wholly from the Descriptions of *Nyendaël* and *Dapper*, without mentioning either. *Dapper* has the fame Fault, which renders the Writings of thofe two Authors of no Authority. For this Reason, we always make ufe of them with great Caution, when what they relate is not in fome Sort confirmed by others.

Hence it may not be amifs to give fome Account of *Bafman*, an Author to whom we have been greatly indebted. This Gentleman had always an ardent Defire to fee foreign Countries, which he had read of in Books; which was at laft gratified, in his being fent, in the *Dutch Company's Service*, to *Guinea*. There, after having been feveral Years a Factor, he was advanced to be chief Faftor of *Axim*, the firft of their Ports and Settlements on the *Gold-Coaft*, and afterwards of *el Mina*. As he was fourteen Years in that Country, he had an Opportunity of fatisfying his Curiofity, there having been fcarce any Place upon the Coast, where he had not ftaid for fome Time.

AFTER he had committed his Observations to Writing, he thought himfelf under an Obligation to impart them to his Countrymen, to which he was farther incited by a Friend.

AT firft, he divided his Remarks into five Divifion of Books. The firft treated of the Extent, Divifion, and Fertility of the *Gold-Coaft*: The fecond, of the Cuftoms, Manners, Religion, and Government of the Inhabitants: The third, of the Trade of the Coast, as managed both by the Negroes and Europeans: The fourth, of the Animals, wild and tame, Quadrupeds, Reptiles, Infefts, Fowl, Fish, Plants, Fruits, and other Vegetables: The fifth, of the Kingdoms of *Landingör*, *Keta*, and the two *Popes*, and the charming Country of *Fida* (or *Whidab*.) To this was added, a coafting Voyage, performed by the Author in 1698.

BUT afterwards having had an Occafion of fending the Whole, in twenty-two Letters, to his Friend, (a Phyfician in *Holland*) he chofe to publifh it in that Form. To thefe he annexed two more Letters, written to him by two Perfons in the Company's Service; the firft, relating to *Benin*, from *David van Nyendaël*, before-mentioned; the fecond, giving a Description of the *Tooth and Grain-Coaft*, by *John Smeek*.

THIS Work was printed originally in *Dutch*, from whence it was tranflated into feveral other Languages. There are in *Englifh* three Editions of it; the firft, in 1705, which is that we have made ufe of: It contains four hundred and ninety-three

thirteen Pages, besides the Title, Preface, Contents, and Index of the principal Matters.

Reason for publishing it. BOSMAN was the more desirous to publish this Relation, because the Coast of Guinea was then, for the most Part, unknown to Europeans in general, and no Description of it in print; excepting a few Scraps, scattered in Books written upon other Subjects, most of which were contrary to Truth, and afforded but a sorry Sketch of Guinea. On this Occasion, he takes Notice of two voluminous Writers in the last Century; who, though commendable for what they wrote concerning *Holland*, did not deserve Credit in one Half of their Accounts of foreign Countries. The Authors here hinted at, (for he does not name them in his Preface, from whence this is taken) seem to be *Olofer Dapper*, before-mentioned, and *William Godschalk van Finkenburgh*, (or *Finkenburgh*, as elsewhere written ^b) whom he often censures in his Relation.

WHEN the Work was considerably advanced, there arrived on the Coast, a Person skilled in designing. Him the Author employed to draw all the *European* Forts to the East of *el Mina*; and, for his greater Convenience, went along with him, having been sent by the *Dutch* General upon Affairs relating to Trade. The Animals he drew from the Life, and the Forts according to the Rules of Perspective: But he died just when they were ready to take another Journey to the West of *el Mina*; which is the Reason that there are no Cuts of those on that Side.

THE Cuts consist of seven Plates, the first four containing Prospects of the Forts: The fifth is confined to the Quadrupeds, and the two left to the Birds.

THERE are generally two Views of every Fort on the opposite Sides. In the first Plate, those of *el Mina, Mawri, and Annamala*: In the second, one View of Fort *Courmadjbourg*, and two of *Cape Corso*: In the third Plate, two Views of the Dutch Forts at *Kermantzin* and *Joam*, and of the English Fort at *Sinpa* (or *Huancha*): In the fourth, two Views of the English, Dutch, and Danish Forts at *Akbra*. The Reader will find the three other Plates towards the End of our second Volume.

SECT. I.

The GEOGRAPHY of Berlin.

Situation and Bounds. Extent of Benin. Coast and Islands. Towns along it. River Lagoes.

King Formosa.	Neighbouring Lands.	Name,	The Gov.
whence. Air of the River: Very unhealthy.			Empty
Towns:	Boedodoe: Awerri:	Arcebo: Gatton:	
or Agaton.	A wide Alluvial. The King's Cru-		
	city. Oedo, or Benin City: Large Street and		
	Bazaar: The Walls: Gates and Towers:		
	Houses and Buildings: Greatly decayed: Cause		
	thereof. King's Palace: Courts and Galleries.		
	Markets and Provisions. Trade there.		

THE Kingdom of *Benin*, *Binnin*, *Binni*, or *Sir and Binni**, (for so it is variously written by Authors) is a Country whose Bounds are not well-known to Travellers, or defined by Geographers: However, these latter, taking it in a larger Sense, situate it between the nineteenth and thirty-fifth Degrees of East Longitude; and between the tenth Degree of North, and the third of South Latitude, giving it an Extent of about nine hundred and thirty Miles from West to East, and six hundred and forty from North to South. They bound it on the West by the *Bight of Benin* and the *Gold-Coast*; from whence it is separated by the *Rio da Volta*; on the North, by *Negroland*; on the East, by the Kingdoms of *Ashap* and *Alaketa*; and on the South, by the *Bight* and *Kongo*†: Thus including the Kingdoms of *Koto*, *Papa*, *Whidah*, and *Aradrab*, already described, with all the Coasts distinguished in our Chart by the Name of *Benin*, *Biafara*, and *Majumba*; reaching Southward beyond Cape *Lape Goulah*, as far as *Leacon*, a Part of *Kongo*.

BUT *Benin*, considered in its proper Limits, *Extent of*
comprizes but a small Part of this large Extent *Benin*.
of Country, being bounded on the West by the
Kingdom of *Avraba*; on the South, by the
Bight, and the Countries of *Atterri*, and *Kal-
bari*, or *Kalahor*. On the North, some Geo-
graphers put the Kingdoms of *Tadé*, *Oudabé*, *U-
bani*, *Idjag*, and *Gabou*; placing on the East
that of *Iffanna*. But this Limitography we do not
pretend to vouch, much less can we ascertain its
due Dimensions; farther than that it may extend
along the Coast, from Cape *Lagos*, or *Lago*, to
Rio Forcadet, about an hundred and sixty, or an
hundred and seventy Miles.

FROM *la Prieta*, or the Road of *Yakin*, (eight ^{The Coast} or ten Leagues West of Cape *Lagoa*) to the *Ria* and *Ishale* ^{the Coast} *Pernam*, or *Beni* River, Mariners commonly reckon fifty or fifty-five Leagues, East by North, sailing, in a direct Line, without the Isles of *Kurams*. This Course the *Dutch* take; but the *English* and *Portuguese* usually steer between these Islands and the Continent, which runs in a

^a He seems to have been unacquainted with the Description of this same Coull, mentioned before under the Name of *Aras of Darnair*; although he seems, in some Places, to point at it, and often agrees in exactly with it in his Remarks, as to have induced us once to think he had copied from it, like *Barbot*. ^b See

Reynolds's Description of Guinea, p. 142, and 222.

⁴ See *Le Monde's* last Map of Africa, for the Use of the present French King.

Benin Kingdom.

Kind of Semicircle. This Passage, or Channel, may be divided into three Parts; those of *Lagoa*, *Kuramo*, and *Benin*. The Channel of *Lagoa*, which begins at Cape *Lagoa*, reaches to the River *Lagoa*, about sixteen Leagues North-East; and though about ten broad, at the Entrance between the Cape and the first Island, is so choked by Shoals, that in some Parts it is no wider than a large River for several Leagues together. The Channel of *Kuramo* begins at the River *Lagoa*, and is much more spacious within; so as to be called by some, the Lake of *Kuramo*. It has in the Middle fourteen or fifteen Fathom Water, navigable for Brigantines, or Sloops; and extends about thirty Leagues to that of *Benin*, which is narrow, and carries you into the *Rio Formosa*.

From along the River.

BETWEEN Cape *Lagoa* and the River of that Name, you meet with the Rivers *Allo* and *Dede*, on the left-Hand, or Continent-Side, but no Towns. On the East Point of the *Lagoa*, stands the Village *Almata*, and not far thence, the Town of *Karan*, fenced with double Pallisades. Thirteen Leagues Eastward is the Town of *Jabun*, surrounded likewise with a wooden Wall, on the West Side of the Entrance of the River *Palmar*, before which there are Stays for the Fishery-Nets. Twelve Leagues thence is the River *Primeria*; and twenty farther, *Royce* Point, at the Entrance of *Rio Formosa*. Twenty Leagues up it stands the Town of *Gatten*, or *Agatten*, on the East Side of the River; and on the other Side opposite, North-West, is the Town of *Argon*, or *Arguna*, from whence the River also takes the Name.

River La.

BARBOT observes, that the River *Lagoa*, at its Entrance into the Channel, has a Bar scarce passable for Boats, on account of the Violence of the Surf; and that several Leagues inland up this River, the Portuguese Maps place *Ciudad de Juhu*, or, *The City of Juhu*. He adds, that at the Town of *Kuramo*, (in our Pilots called *Karan*) the Natives make fine Cloths, which sell well on the *Gold-Coast*, the Trade being carried on in Sloops, or Bar-Canoes.

Rio Formosa.

THE Distance between the Eastermost *Kuramo* Isle, and the South-East Point of *Rio Formosa*, is ten Leagues, with from twelve to fifteen Foot Water; and from thence to *Royce-beck*, or *Point*, (which, at a Distance, appears like a high Rock with the Top flatted) the Entrance is about eight or nine Leagues; but, as the Shores approach, it decreases to four English Miles; and failing farther-up, the Breadth varies considerably from Time to Time.

THIS River appears plainly, if entered from the West; for from *Ardrab* the Land is even

* *Barbot* calls it *Kuramo*.

† Description of *Guinea*, p. 354, & seq.

* *Barbot*, as before, p. 355.

† In our Pilots called *Gura*, and confounded with *Benin* Town. *Barbot's* History.

† *Nyandali*, in *Bushman's Description of Guinea*, p. 425, & seq.

The Geography.

and woody. The West Point is much higher, and looks like a Rock with the Top cut-off; but the East Point is low, flat Land. Its Mouth is about four Miles wide, but failing up, it is wider in some Places and narrower in others. It divides itself into innumerable Branches, some so broad, that they deserve the Name of Rivers; and the Banks of each are inhabited by a particular Nation, governed by its own King. This Multitude of Branches renders it so difficult to sail-up this River, that a Pilot is always absolutely necessary.

THE Author could get no Information as to the Length and Source of this River, but believes its Branches extend through all the neighbouring Countries: For he had seen several who came from *Ardrab*, *Kallbari*, (or *Kalabar*) and other Places, in order to trade; who were taken on this River by the Robbers, and sold for Slaves. He was informed by the Portuguese, that there was a Land-Road from hence to *Kallbari*, and one, much more commodious, by Water; and that it was easy, with a Canoe, to get into the circumjacent Rivers, *Lagoa*, *Ebra*, *Kamaronet*, and several others, and even the *Rio Volta*. This Account may be admitted with respect to all but the last, which is at too great a Distance for such a Communication.

JUAN ALFONSO DE AVEIRO, the first Discoverer of *Benin*, gave this River the Name of *Rio Formosa*; which, in Portuguese, signifies, *The Beautiful River*. The English, Dutch, and French, call it indifferently that of *Benin*, or *Argon*.

SEVERAL Leagues up from the Mouth of the River, the Land is all low and marshy; but the Banks adorned with high and lofty Trees. The Country round is divided into Islands by the Multiplicity of its Branches. Besides which, here are several Sorts of floating Isles, or Lands, covered with Reeds, driven by the Winds, or Trayed, from one Place to another; by which Means they often interrupt and endanger the Navigation.

THE River is very pleasant, but unwholesome, as of the most of the Rivers on the Coast seem naturally to be. This the Author imputes to the continual contagious Exhalations, which proceed from the Morasses, or low Grounds. Another Plague here is the Gnats, or Mucketo: For the Land being woody, is intolerably pestered with these Vermin; especially in the Night, when they attack People in Swarms, and sting so severely, that they have no Rest, and in the Morning are scarce to be known.

THESE two Evils usually occasion a great

Benin
Kingdom.

Mortality among Strangers. The Author, in each of his Voyages, lost half his Men. Five of his Sailors were so wicked, as to throw Dice who should die or live to come out of the River; and they persecuted the Author's Servant, a Boy, to throw with them. He threw eleven, and yet escaped. The other five died in the Country.

BUT for the Malignity of the Climate this would be a most agreeable Place, the River being extremely pleasant, and the adjacent Country affording a charming Prospect: For the Land is very *even*, without Hills, yet rising by gentle Degrees; and the Trees are disposed by Nature in such regular Order, as if planted by Design.

Towns.

THERE are at present three principal Towns, where the Dutch trade, and on that Account resorted to by the inland Negroes, especially when Ships arrive.

THE chief Places for Trade on Benin River, are *Boisdade*, *Arabi*, (or *Arben*) *Agaton* (or *Gatton*) and *Meisberg*.

Boisdade.

BOEDODOE is a Village of about fifty Houses, or Cottages, built with Reeds and Leaves. Its District is governed by a Vice-Roy and some *Grandees*, whose Authority only extends to deciding civil Causes and levying Taxes; for on considerable Emergencies, or in criminal Cases, they are obliged to send to Court for Orders.

Awerri.

TWO Leagues within the Mouth of *Ris Fernosa*, are two Branches, two English Miles distant. On one of these lies the Town of *Awerri*, (or *Owoerri*) belonging to a King, independent on him of *Benin*. There the Portuguese have a Church and Factory.

Arabi.

THE usual trading-Place on Benin River is called *Arabi*, (or *Arben*) sixty Leagues above its Mouth: But Ships may pass beyond, sailing by hundreds of Branches of this River, besides Creeks, some very wide. This is a fine, large, oblong Town, pretty populous. The Houses are larger than those at *Boisdade*, though built the same Way. This Place, and the Country adjacent, is governed by a Vice-Roy.

SOME Years ago the Dutch and English had Lodges, or Factories, here, with their *Merceders*, and *Fianders*, the last of which are a Sort of Brokers. But the English having neglected this Trade, their Lodge fell-down, and their Factors incorporated with the Dutch.

Gatton, or
Agaton.

AGATTON, (or *Gatton*) the third Place, had formerly a considerable Trade, but has suffered so much by the Wars, it lies in a Manner waste. It is situated on a small Hill in the River, almost close to the Land. The Ruins dis-

cover it to have been a large Town, much more agreeable and healthy than the others, for which Reason the Negroes are rebuilding it. It is surrounded by all Sorts of Fruit-Trees.

The Geography.

HEREABOUTS are several small Villages, whose Inhabitants resort here to every considerable Market, which is held for five Days. A Day's Journey from *Agaton*, is the City, or Village of *Great Benin*, the King's Residence.

BARBOT says, the Town of *Gatton*, by the Portuguese called *Hogaton*, or *Agaton*, is twenty-four Leagues higher up the River to the North-East, than *Arben* (between them the River growing narrower:) And that it is twelve Leagues to the North of *Oodo*, the Metropolis of *Benin*.

THE last of the four Places of Trade is the Village *Meisberg*, so called probably from some Factor of the Dutch Company, who had formerly a considerable Factory here. It is remarkable chiefly for a Tragedy acted here. *N. Boeldsinger*, their last Factor, having cast a wanton Eye on one of the Negro-Governor's Wives, ravished her; which so enraged the injured Husband, that he came with a Body of armed Men, resolved to kill the Adulterer, who narrowly escaped on board a Ship; but in the Flight was wounded so, that, by the Surgeon's Unskillfulness he died. The Company's Director-General on the Coast, not being rightly informed of the Case, sent a Yacht from *el Mina*, well manned, to *Benin*, with strict Orders to revenge the Murder, as it was called. These Soldiers so stretched their Commission, that they killed, or took Prisoners, every Person in the Village of *Meisberg*, who could not escape.

THE King of *Great Benin* informed of this, and the Occasion of the Massacre, commanded the Negro-Governor to be brought before him; and though he had done nothing but what seemed right, in defending the Honour of his Family, yet the King caused him and his whole Race, to the third and fourth Generation, to be cut in Pieces, in order, by this Cruelty, to justify himself. The dead Bodies of these miserable Wretches were exposed to be devoured, and their Houses razed to the Ground, with strict Orders they should never be rebuilt. The Dutch finding the King so zealous in their Interest, continued to trade there ever since.

THE chief Town, or City, of all the Country, is called *Oodo*, but by Europeans, commonly *Benin*, or *Binnin*. *Nyendael* says, this Place gives the Name of *Benin* to the Country and River; that it stands about twelve Leagues, North-

* *Nyendael*, in *Sismon's Description of Guinea*, p. 428, &c.

Description of Guinea, p. 355.

* *Barbot*, as before, p. 355. It should be South-West of *Oodo*.

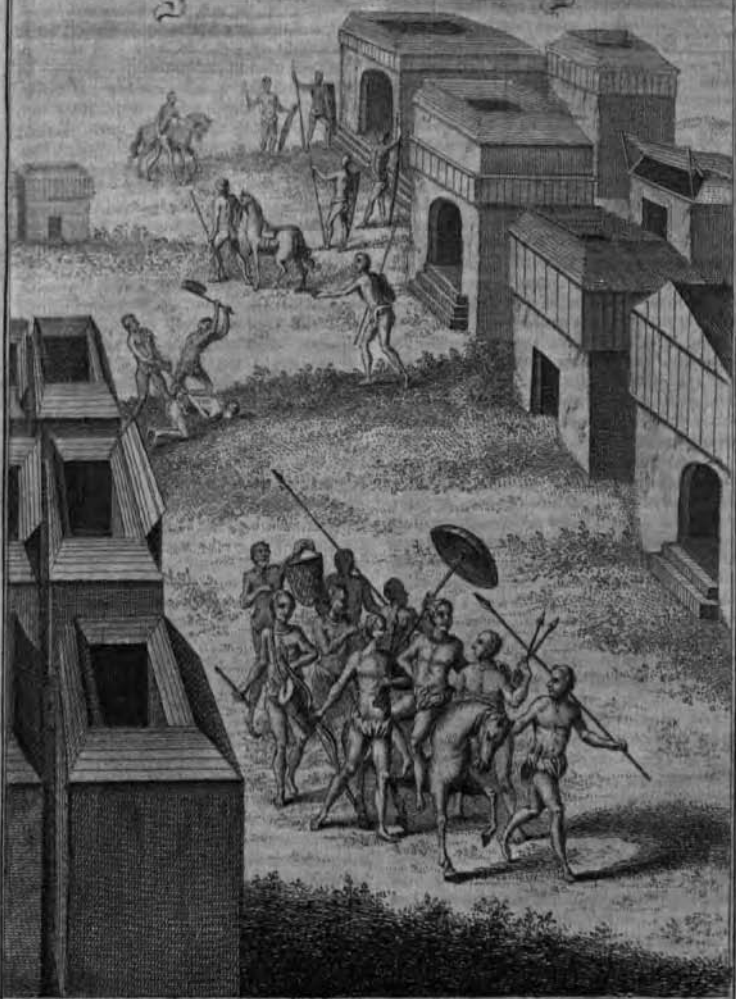
* The same, p. 426; and *Barbot's*

Description of Guinea, p. 360.

* *Nyendael*, as before, p. 432, & seq.

East,

*Houles in Benin, from de Bry.
With their Executions & way of Riding.*



Benin Kingdom. East, from the Village of *Agatten*, in a delightful Plain, (covered with fine Trees) and is about six Leagues in Compass, (including the Palace;) yet he calls it only a Village, saying, it scarce deserves the Name of a City.

Large Street. THE City of *Benin*, says *Artus* of *Dantzick*, appears at first Sight very large; for as you enter, you see a broad, open Street, eight Times broader than any in *Holland*, which runs in a Line to the End of the City. After walking a Quarter of an Hour, you may just perceive the Top of an high Tree, which is near two Miles distant; beyond which the Street yet extends a great Way, though the Houses at that End are not so handsome.

SOME say this Street is above a League in Length, exclusive of the Suburbs. It is intersected by many cross Streets and Lanes, all strait, and extending out of Sight. You must cross a large Suburb before you come to the Gate, which is of Wood, and always guarded. At the Entrance there is a large Bulwark of Earth cast-up, broad and high, with a broad, deep, but dry Ditch, thick-set with tall Trees. This Ditch extends a great Way, but the Author could not tell whether it went round the Town, Strangers not being at Liberty to view it; for as soon as one enters the Gate, a Person is appointed to conduct him, under Pretence of showing him the Way, but in reality to prevent his making any Observations.

Two Walls. SINCE the Time of *Artus*, Europeans have had better Opportunities. According to *Dapper*, *Benin* is inclosed on one Side by a double Fence or Wall of large Trunks of Trees, ten Foot high, set close in the Ground like a Pallado, and fastened together by Spans of five or six Foot laid athwart, the Space between the two Rows being filled-up with red Clay; which, at a Distance, looks like a good thick Wall, very even and smooth. The other Side of the City is defended by a large Trench, or Ditch, and Hedge of Brambles, so thick set, that there is no approaching it.

Gate and Walls. THE Gates, ten Foot high, and five broad, are made of one Piece of Wood, and hang, or rather turn, on a Pin in the Middle. Each has a Guard of Soldiers, and opens to the Country through a Suburb.

OEDDO is divided into Wards, or Districts, each governed by its respective King of the Street, like an Alderman. There are in it thirty large Streets, most of them twenty Fathom wide, and two English Miles long, reaching from one Gate

a to the other in a strait Line, besides cross Streets and Lanes. These are all kept by the Women very neat; for here, as in *Holland*, every Woman cleans her own Door.

Two Houses. THE Houses, in the Time of *Artus*, were built adjoining to each other in good Order, like as in *Europe*. Those of their Grandees and Gentry are higher than the rest, and ascended to by Stairs. At the Entry is a Vestibule, or Porch, where they may sit or walk, sheltered from the Heat. These are cleaned-out early in the Morning by their Slaves, and spread with Mats of Straw. The inner Chamber is square, with a Roof open in the Middle for the Light to pass. In these Apartments they both sleep and eat, though they dress their Victuals in other Places separate, having many Offices under one Roof. The Houses of the common People have only one Wall, with a wooden Door in the Middle. They have no Windows, but receive the Light and Air from an Opening in the Roof. All their Buildings are of red Earth, tempered with Water, and being dried by the Sun, forms a solid Wall. They are about two Foot thick, the better to resist the Weather, which often destroys them.

FORMERLY, says *Nyendael*, *Benin* was very greatly thick and close built, and in a Manner too crowded with Inhabitants, as is visible from the Ruins; but at present the Houses stand widely distant. They are generally large and handsome, with Clay Walls, for there is not a Stone to be found in the Country as big as a Man's Fist. They are covered with Reed, Straw, or Leaves. The Architecture is passable, compared with other Negro Buildings, and is much like that used at *Asim* (on the *Gold-Coast*).

THE desolate State of the City is the more deplorable, as the circumjacent Country is so pleasant and level; there being no Hill or Woods to interrupt the Prospect of Thousands of fine Trees. The Ruin of the Place was occasioned by the King's putting to Death two Street Kings, under Pretence, that they had attempted his Life; though every-body believes the true Reason was only to get their Riches. But a third Man, on whom the King had the same Design, on timely Warning, fled away; and was so beloved, that three Fourths of the Inhabitants followed him. A Body of Men, who were sent to oblige the Fugitives to return, having been defeated, the King made a second Attempt to reduce them, but with the same ill Success. This encouraged the Street King to return to the City, which he

* *Byssman's Description of Guinea*, p. 161.

† *Ibid.*

‡ *Barbot* says, by a large Morass, surrounded with thick, thorny Bushes.

§ *Artus*, p. 470; and *Barbot's Description of Guinea*, p. 358.

¶ *Artus*, p. 461; and *Barbot*, as before, p. 359.

‡ *Artus*, as before, p. 461.

* *Artus*, in *de Bry's Ind. Orient.* vol. 2. Part. 6. p. 119.

† *Ibid.*

‡ *Nyendael*, in *Byssman's Description of*

§ *Artus*, as before, p. 420.

¶ *Nyendael*, as

plundered,

plundered, sparing no Place but the King's Court. After this he retired, but for the Space of ten Years continued to rob the Inhabitants; till, by the Mediation of the Portuguese, a Peace being concluded betwixt him and the King, he was pardoned all that had passed, and invited to come to his former Habitation. However, not caring to trust himself there, he lived two or three Days Journey from *Benin*, in as great State as the King himself.

THE Citizens who returned were kindly received by the King, and preferred to honourable Posts, in order to induce the rest; But as they seemed content to remain where they were, the greater Part of *Benin* was likely to remain uninhabited.

King's Palace.

THE Royal Palace, according to *Artus*, is of vast Extent, and contains many large Squares, surrounded with Galleries, each of which has a Portico, or Gate, where a Guard is kept. It is so large, that you can see no End; for when you have walked till you are tired, and think your Labour over, you see another Gate, opening into a larger Square. It contains Apartments not only for Men, (which are small) but for Horses and Cattle.

THIS general Description is confirmed by the larger given of it by *Nyendael*. The King's Court, says that Author, which makes the principal Part of the City, stands on a very great Plain, about which there are no Houses. Its Extent is the most remarkable Thing about it. The first Thing observable, is a very long Gallery, if it may be called so, which is supported by fifty-eight strong Planks, about twelve Foot high, instead of Pillars. After you pass this Gallery, you come to the Mud, or Earthen Wall, which has three Gates, at each Corner one, and another in the Middle, the best of which is adorned at the Top with a wooden Turret like a Chimney, about sixty or seventy Foot high. At the Top of all is fixed a large Copper Snake, the Head hanging downward. This Figure is very well cast, or carved, and is the best the Author saw here. Entering one of these Gates, you find a Plain of about a Mile square, inclosed with a low Wall.

Courts and Galleries.

AT the End of this Plain you meet such another Gallery like the first, but without Wall or Turret. Some Time since, this Gallery was half destroyed by Lightning, since which it has lain in Ruin. It has a Gate at each End, passing through which a third Gallery appears in View,

differing from the former only in that the Planks which support it are cut into human Figures, but so wretchedly carved, that it is scarce possible to distinguish if they were Men or Beasts; however, the Author's Negro-Guides could represent them as Merchants, Soldiers, &c. Behind a white Cotton Carpet were placed eleven Mens Heads cast in Copper by much such an Art as the Carver; and on each Head was an Elephant's Tooth, these being some of the King's Gods. Going through a Gate of this Gallery you enter a great Plain, and see a fourth Gallery, beyond which is the King's Dwelling-House. Here is another Snake as on the first Wall. In the first Apartment, at the Entrance of the Plain, is the King's Audience-Chamber.

The Court.

DAPPER says, this Palace stands on the Right-Hand of the City as you enter the Gate from *Gatsin*, (or *Acatlan*) and is, according to *Barbot*, as large as *Rochelle*, or *Bordeaux*.

IN the larger Streets every Morning and Afternoon there are kept continual Markets, either of Cattle, Cotton, Elephants Teeth, or European Merchandizes, or whatever the Country affords. *Artus* mentions two Market-Places, the greater they call *Dia de Ferro*; the lesser simply *Ferra*. In both are sold live Dogs, of which they are very fond; roasted Baboons and Monkeys; Bats and large Rats; Parrots, Hens; Lizards dried in the Sun; Fruits and Palm-Wine; wooden Platters, Cups, and other Household-Stuff; Cotton-Cloth, Iron Instruments for fishing and tilling the Ground; Arrows, Darts, and other Weapons. Each Sort of Merchandise has its proper Standing, and all are disposed in good Order. As for Provision, the City is well furnished with Cattle and Fruits. They have two Sorts of excellent Wine, called *Vino de Palis*, and *Vino de Bordon*, (or *Pardon*;) one Sort is drank in the Morning, or at Noon, the other in the Evening. They have a particular Fruit tasting like Garlic, but of a purple Colour; and when they take an Oath, they swear to abstain from it.

SEVERAL rich People reside at *Benin*, who attend the Court, not concerning themselves with Trade and Agriculture, but leaving all their Affairs to their Wives and Servants. These go to all the circumjacent Villages to trade in all Sorts of Merchandizes, or serve for daily Wages; and are obliged to bring the greatest Part of their Gain or Hire in to their Masters. The Inhabitants are all Natives, no Foreigners being allowed to live in this City.

* *Nyendael*, in *Bushman's Description of Guinea*, p. 466, & seq. Part. 6. p. 121.

† *Oz*, *Piazza*.

Africa, p. 670. as before, p. 462.

‡ *Nyendael*, as before, p. 461.

§ *Artus*, as before, p. 463, & seq.

¶ *Artus*, as before, p. 120, and 122.

• *Ogilby's Africa*.

• *Nyendael*.

SECT. II.

Benin
Kingdom.

The Inhabitants, their Character: Civil and sincere. Dress of the Men: Of the Women and Children. Head Attire. Their Diet. Music and Dancing. Their Marriages. The Men jealous. The Women Drudges. Both Sexes circumcised. Twins, how treated. Cruel Custom. Inevitable Ignorance. Sickness and Death: Mourning and Burials: Of Grandees: Of the Kings. Sepulchral Victims. No Beggars. Industry and Trade. Their Commerce. Mercadours, and Fiadors.

Inhabitants,
Grandees.

THOUGH there are a vast Number of People in this Country of *Great Benin*, yet compared with *Ardrah*, Proportion considered, it is not populous; the Towns being widely distant from each other, as well those near the River as within Land.

The Inhabitants are generally good-natured and civil, and may be brought to any thing by fair and soft Means. If you make them Presents, they will recompence them doubly. If you want any thing of them, and ask it, they seldom deny it, even though they had Occasion for it themselves: But to treat them harshly, or think to gain any thing of them by Force, is to dispute with the Moon. They are very expert in Business, and tenacious of their old Customs, with which, if you comply, it is easy to deal with them.

Civil and
sincere.

AMONG themselves they are very civil and complaisant in outward Show, but otherwise are very close and reserved, especially in their Trade, not caring to trust one another^b. They behave obligingly to all the *Europeans*, except the *Portuguese*, whom they do not like very well, but are very fond of the *Dutch*^c.

ARTUS says, that the People of *Benin* are a sincere, inoffensive People, and do no Injustice either to one another, or Strangers. These latter they pay great Respect to, saluting them, and giving them the Way (though heavy laden) wherever they meet them. He adds, that it is a capital Crime here to injure a Foreigner, and punished thus: They take the Offender, tie his Hands behind his Back, and blindfold his Eyes. After this the Judge raises him up so, that his Head hangs to the Ground, which the Executioner cuts off with a Hatchet; and separating the Body into four Quarters, leaves it exposed to the wild Beasts^d.

THE *Negros* here are very libidinous, which they ascribe to their *Parden-Wine*, and good

a Eating. They are not, however, guilty of Obscenity in Conversation, but very fond of double Entendres that Way; one, who excels in giving broad Hints neatly wrapped-up, passing for a Wit^e.

THE Habit of the *Benin-Blacks* is neat, ornamental, and much better than that used on the *Gold-Coast*. The Rich wear, first, a white Calico, or Cotton-Cloth, about a Yard long, and half so broad, which serves them for Drawers. Over that they have a finer Cotton, commonly about sixteen or twenty Yards long, which they very ornamentally plait in the Middle; casting over it a Scarf of about a Yard long, and two Spans broad, the End of which is adorned with Fringe or Lace, somewhat like the Womens Dress on the *Gold-Coast*. The upper Part of their Body is mostly naked. These are the Cloaths in which they appear abroad, but at home they wear only a coarse *Paan*^f, instead of Drawers, covered with a great painted Cloth of their own Manufacture, which they wear like a Cloak.

THE Wives of the Grandees wear Calico^g of Women and Children, *Paans* woven in this Country, which are fine, and very beautifully chequered with several Colours. These Cloaths are not very long, and are buckled together like those worn at *Whidah*; but with this Difference, that as the *Whidah Paan* is open before, this, on the contrary, is open behind, or on one Side, and closed before. The upper Part of their Bodies is covered with a beautiful Cloth of a Yard long, instead of a Veil, like that which the Women wear on the *Gold-Coast*. On their Necks they have Coral Necklaces agreeably disposed and plaited. Their Arms (and also the Legs of some) are adorned with bright Copper or Iron Rings, and their Fingers as thick crowded with Copper Rings as they can wear them.

THE meaner Sort, both of Men and Women, differ from the Rich only in the Goodness of their Cloaths, every one dressing according to his Ability.

ALMOST all the Children go naked, the Boys till they are ten or twelve Years old, and the Girls till Nature discovers their Maturity. Till then they only wear some Strings of Coral about their Middle^h.

ARTUS says, that the young Men and Women go naked here till they are married, unless the King grants them the Privilege of wearing Cloth sooner, which is reckoned a high Favour, and observed with great Rejoicing and Feastingⁱ.

^a Nyendaal, in *Bushman's Description of Guinea*, p. 470.
^b p. 463.

^c As the *Portuguese*, or, *Pagau*, as the *French*, term it, as before.

^d The same, p. 434.

^e Part. 6. p. 122.

^f Nyendaal, as before, p. 439. & seq.

^g The same,

^h Nyendaal, as before, p. 443.

ⁱ *Artus*,

*Benin
Kingdom
Habit dress.*

THE Men content themselves with letting their Hair grow in its natural Form, except buckling it in two or three Places, in order to hang a great Coral at it. But the Womens Hair is very artificially curled-up in great and small Buckles; and divided on the Crown, like a Cock's Comb inverted, by which Means the small Curls lie in exact Order. Some divide their Hair into twenty or more Curls, as it happens to be thick or thin; others oil it with Palm-Oil^a: By this Means its black Colour turns, in Time, to a Sort of Green or Yellow, which they are very fond of, though, in the Author's Opinion, it looked hideously^b.

Their Dress.

THE Natives, if rich, love to feast and live well. The common Diet of the Rich, is Beef, Mutton, and Chickens, with Yams for their Bread. After boiling, they beat them very fine, in order to make Cakes of them. They frequently treat one another, and give the Overplus to the Poor.

THE meaner Sort content themselves with smoked or dried Fish, which, when salted, is like what the Dutch call *Rofs*, and *Reekel*. Their Bread is Yams, Bananas, and Beans; their Drink Water and *Parden*-Wine, which is none of the best. The richer Sort drink Water and Brandy when they can get it^c.

*Night and
Dancing.*

THEIR musical Instruments are large and small Drums, not unlike those of the *Gold-Coast*. Besides these, they have a Sort of Iron Bells, on which they play; also Kalabashes hung round with *Béjir*, which serve them instead of Castanets, all which together produce a disagreeable, jarring Sound.

THEY have besides an Instrument strung with six or seven extended Reeds, on which they play with Art, singing and dancing to it at the same Time very agreeably. These *Benin* Negroes, in this Exercise, exceed even those of *Axim*; but they are not given to Gaming, playing only with Beans for their Diversion, never for Money^d.

*Their Mar-
riages.*

THE Natives of *Benin* marry as many Women as their Circumstances will allow. Their Marriage Ceremonies are few. If a Man likes a Girl, he discovers the Matter to one of the most considerable Relations, who asks her of her Friends, by whom, if not promised before, she is seldom denied. The Consent obtained, the Match goes on, and the Bridegroom cloaths his Bride with a rich Suit of Cloaths, Necklaces, and Bracelets. Nothing remains after this to conclude the Wedding, but to treat the Relations on both Sides. This Treat is not given at the Bride-

groom's House, or any other Place; but the *Vic-The Inhabitants* and Drink being prepared, each has his Part sent home.

THE Negroes are very jealous of their own Countrymen, but will allow the *Europeans* to take all Liberties with their Wives within the Bounds of Modesty; nay, if called abroad, will leave the Dutch alone in their Company, ordering them to entertain and divert them. But no Male Negro dare approach the Womens Apartment.

ALL the Difference between the Wives of the great, and those of the meaner Sort, is, that the latter go wherever their Work obliges them, but the former are shut-up always close to prevent Transgression.

WHEN a Man receives a Visit at home, his Wives always withdraw to another Part of the House, except the Visitors are *Europeans*, in which Case the Husband makes them stay^e.

THE Women at *Benin* are as much Slaves as *Women* in any Part of the Kingdom. They are obliged to keep the daily Markets, to look after House-keeping and the Children, to tend the Kitchen, and till the Ground; so that they have full Employment, yet they dispatch it briskly, and with great Chearfulness^f.

AS the Women are not barren, and the Men have their Choice of Wives, the Multiplication of Mankind goes on well here; Women that are fruitful being highly valued, and the barren despised^g.

THE pregnant Wife is debarred all Cohabitation with her Husband till her Delivery. If she has a Male Infant, it is presented to the King as belonging to him, whence all the Males of the Land are called the King's Slaves: But the Girls belong to the Father, with whom they live till at Age; after which he marries them as he pleases.

EIGHT or fourteen Days, sometimes longer, after the Birth of the Child, both Males and Females are circumcised^h; the former by cutting-off the Prepuce, and the latter by taking away a small Part of the *Clitoris*ⁱ. Menstruous Women are esteemed so unclean, that they are not suffered so much as to enter their Husband's Houses, or to touch any thing about the House, either as to dressing Diet, or cleaning the House, being obliged, during this Time, to reside in a separate House; but as soon as their natural Indisposition is over, and they have washed themselves, they are restored to their former State. If they are asked, who first taught them these two last Customs? they make the common Answer, as

^a In the Original, it is with Oil extracted by roasting Oil-Nuts of *Guinea*, p. 441.

^b The same, p. 438.

^c The same, p. 453.

^d The same, p. 453.

^e The same, p. 447.

^f and other *Mohammedan* Rice.

^g Nyendasi, see before, p. 444.

^h Nyendasi, in *Beisman's* Description

ⁱ The same, p. 441.

^j *Aruu* says, they use Circum-

Benin Kingdom. on all other Occasions, that they do not know, a Mother, (or a Female Slave in her Place) should be violated, the Land would be exposed to some severe Plague. The Author, to ridicule their Credulity, went frequently a shooting in this Wood, and designedly turned before he got to the End of the Path; which not a little staggered the People, who saw his Boldness go unpunished. But the Priest was ready with an Exorcise, that as he was a white Man, their God did not trouble his Head with him; but if a Negro should presume to do so, he would soon see the Danger of it.

BESIDES the Pain of Circumcision, they must undergo that of pinking their Bodies, by making small Incisions all over them, in a Sort of regular Figures^b. The Females are more adorned this Way than the Males. This must be very painful to the Children, but it is thought exceeding ornamental.

WHEN the Child is seven Days old, the Parents make a small Feast, imagining it is past the greatest Danger; and in order to prevent the evil Spirits from doing it any Mischief, they strew all the Ways with Victuals to appease them.

Twin, low created. If a Woman bear two Children at a Birth, it is thought a good Omen, and the King is immediately informed of it, who causes public Joy to be expressed by all Sorts of Music. The Father in this Case usually provides a Wet-Nurse, whose Child is dead, to suckle one of the Children, believing it too hard a Task for the Wife to supply both.

Twins, low created. AT *Arche*, however, they are of a contrary Opinion, and treat Twin-bearing Women barbarously, killing both the Mother and Children by Way of Sacrifice to a certain Demon; who, as they believe, inhabits a Wood near the Village. The Man generally redeems the Wife, by offering a Female Slave in her Place, but the Children are condemned without Mercy. In 1699, the Author knew a Merchant's Wife, called *El-loré*, or *Mof*, thus redeemed, but her Children were destroyed, whose sad Fate she often deplored with Tears. The following Year she like happened to the Wife of a Priest: She was delivered of two Children, whom, with a Slave in his Wife's Room, the Father was, by Virtue of his Office, himself obliged to sacrifice with his own Hands; notwithstanding which, the Year after, she had Twins again, but the Author knew not how she came off.

THESE dismal Events have had such Effect, that of late the Men, when their Wives are near Delivery, send them to another Country; which made the Author think they would in Time reform these Inhumanities.

Involuntary Ignorance. THE before-mentioned Wood near *Arche*, the Residence of this Twin-hating Devil, is esteemed so sacred, that they never permit a strange Negro or his Wives to enter it. If any Person accidentally happens on a Path leading to this Wood, he is obliged to go-on to the End of it before he turns back again; and they are persuaded, that if this Rule, or that of offering the Children and

The Inhabitants. a Mother, (or a Female Slave in her Place) should be violated, the Land would be exposed to some severe Plague. The Author, to ridicule their Credulity, went frequently a shooting in this Wood, and designedly turned before he got to the End of the Path; which not a little staggered the People, who saw his Boldness go unpunished. But the Priest was ready with an Exorcise, that as he was a white Man, their God did not trouble his Head with him; but if a Negro should presume to do so, he would soon see the Danger of it.

THE *Benin*-Negroes do not seem so much afraid of Death as those of other Countries. They are not uneasy at naming it, since they believe the Duration of every Man's Life is determined by their Gods. Notwithstanding this, they use all Means possible to prolong Life. If they fall sick, their first Refuge is the Priest, who here, as well as on the *Guinea* Coast, acts the Doctor: He first administers green Herbs, which proving ineffectual, he has Recourse to Sacrifices. If the Patient recovers, the Priest is much esteemed; if not, he is dismissed, and another called-in, from whom better Success is expected. If these sacerdotal Doctors happen to cure the Patient, they are revered highly; but when once the Cure is effected, the Regard ceases: So that the Priests here, who have no other Dependence, are generally poor; for each Man offers his own Sacrifices to his Idols, without giving them any Trouble.

WHEN a Person dies, the Body is washed and cleaned. If a Native of *Benin* happens to die at a very distant Place, the Body is perfectly dried-up over a gentle Fire, and put into a Coffin, whole Planks are closely joined with Glue, and so brought, with the first Opportunity, to *Benin* to be interred. But as a Conveyance does not happen sometimes for several Years, they are kept above Ground till the Time, of which the Author saw several Instances at *Arche*.

THE nearest Relations, Wives and Slaves, go into Mourning, by shaving their Hair, some their Beards, and others half their Heads. The public Mourning continues fourteen Days. Their Lamentations and Cries are adapted to the Tunes of several musical Instruments, which give over by Intervals, during which they drink plentifully. When the Funeral is finished, each Person retires home; and the nearest Relations, who continue in Mourning, bewail the Dead in this Manner for several Months^c.

AT the Interment of Persons of Distinction, they massacre thirty or forty Slaves; and it has been known, on Occasion of the Burial of a

^a *Nyendael*, in *Bosman's Description of Guinea*, p. 247. ^b According to *Arche*, they cut three large Sreaks on each Side of their Bodies, from the Shoulders to the Navel, which they think contributes to their Health. See *de Bré's Ind. Orient.* Part. 6. p. 122. ^c *Nyendael*, as before, p. 444, & 499. The same, p. 447, & seq.

Benin Kingdom.

great Lady, that seventy-eight Slaves were sacrificed, all her own; nay, to complete the Number of eighty, they murdered a young Boy and Girl whom she loved greatly. But this Custom is yet more cruel at the Death of their Kings.

Of the Kings.

As soon as a King of *Benin* expires, they dig a large Pit in the Ground at the Palace, so deep, that the Workmen are sometimes in Danger of being drowned by the Quantity of the Water. This Pit they make wide at the Bottom, and very narrow at Top. They first let-down the Royal Corps into it, and then such of his Domestics of both Sexes as are selected for that Honour, for which there is great Interest made. These being let-down into the Pit, they shut-up the Mouth with a large Stone in the Presence of a Crowd of People, who wait Day and Night. The next Morning they remove the Stone, and some proper Officers ask the Persons inclosed, if they have found-out the King? If they answer, the Pit is shut-up again, and the following Day opened with the like Ceremony; which continues till the Persons are dead, and no Answer returned. After this, the chief Ministers inform the Successor, who immediately repairs to the Pit; and causing the Stone to be closed-up, orders all Sorts of Meat to be roasted on it to feast the People. These having eaten and drank plentifully, run about the City in the Night, committing great Outrages, and killing those they meet, chop-off their Heads. Their Bodies they bring and throw into the Pit along with the Garments, Household-Goods and *Buffs* of the Persons so killed, as a Present to the deceased King.

No Beggars.

THE King, the great Lords, and every Governor, who is tolerably rich, subsist several Poor at their Place of Residence on Charity; employing those who are fit to work in order to maintain them, and keeping the rest out of Humanity: So that here are no Beggars, nor are there any remarkably poor.

They are very liberal in all Sorts of Presents, and give the *Europeans* great Quantities of refreshing Provisions, more than they really want. Some give beyond their Ability, purely to get a good Reputation amongst Strangers.

BUT whatever Riches the Merchants and others may be possessed of, they are very studious to conceal them, lest the Governors or King should make some Pretence to seize their Effects. For this Reason they pretend to be poorer than they are, in order to escape the rapacious Hands of their Superiors. This obliges them also, out of Policy, to a mutual Civility, in order to avoid Accusals.

OF the Commonalty, very few are laborious, or industrious, unless it be those who are wretchedly poor. The others lay the whole Burden of their Work on their Wives and Slaves, whether it be tilling the Ground, opening of Cotton, weaving of Cloths, or any other Handicraft; though indeed, except Weaving, there are few manual Arts understood. The Men, if they have the least Stock, apply themselves to Merchandize solely. Their chief Workmen here, are either Smiths, Carpenters, or Leather-Dressers; but all their Workmanship is so clumsy, that an Apprentice of one Month's Learning in *Europe* would out-do them.

THE Handicrafts keep to their Work without minding Merchandize; others employ themselves in Agriculture.

THE ordinary Citizens loiter away their Time till they hear of Ships in the River, upon which they resort to trade with what Goods they have in Store. If no Ships come, they send their Slaves to *Ris Lagos*, or other Places, to buy Fish, of which they make a very profitable Trade farther inland.

THEIR worst Quality is, that they are very tedious in their Way of Trading. Many Times, when they have a Stock of Elephants Teeth, it will be eight or ten Days before they will strike a Bargain: Yet all this is managed with such ceremonious Civilities, that it is impossible to be angry with them.

ANOTHER Inconvenience is, that the *Dutch* are obliged to trust them with Goods to make *Fans* or Cloths of, for the Payment of which they are often constrained to stay so long, that what with the Advancement of the Season, the Want of Provisions, and the Sickness or Mortality of the Men, they are obliged to depart without their Money; though, when they return next Season, they are sure to be honestly paid the Whole.

THE Persons who carry-on Trade between the *Dutch* and the Natives, are appointed by the Government, and called *Mercaders*, and *Fiaders*. This Custom has obtained, because these Factors can speak a wretched Sort of *Portuguese*, which qualifies them to bargain with the *Europeans*; and is indeed their only Excellency, without which they would be deservingly looked-on as the Scum of the People. The *Dutch*, at their Arrival here, are obliged to pay some small Customs, or Fees, to these Brokers and the Governors, which are so inconsiderable, as scarce to be worth mentioning.

ALL Male Slaves here are Foreigners, for the

* *Barbot's Description of Guinea*, p. 366.
Description of *Guinea*, p. 439.
same, p. 462.

* *Pogues, and Pans.*

* The same, p. 371.

* The same, p. 434.

* *Nyendaal*, as before, p. 433, & seq.

* *Nyendaal*, in *Bosman's*
The

Natives cannot be sold, but all are free, unless being called the King's Slaves. Nor is it allowed to export any Male Slaves that are sold in the Country, but the Females may be disposed of at Pleasure.

S E C T. III.

The Religion and Government of Benin.

1. The Religion.

Fetich Worship. Belief of Apparitions. Offerings. Sacrifices. Their Priests. Famous Images. Division of Time. Feast of dead Kings. Coral Feast.

Pomp. On these Occasions they kill Multitudes of Cows, Sheep, and all Sorts of Cattle; besides making a solemn Feast, at which they are merry with their Friends for several Days together, also giving handsome Presents.

THEY imagine the Sea the Seat of future Bliss and Torment. They call a Man's Shadow, his *Passader*, or *Conductor*, and believe it will witness if he lived well or ill. If well, he is raised to great Happiness and Dignity in the Place before-mentioned: If ill, he is to perish with Hunger and Poverty.

THEIR Idols are spread all over their Houses, so that no Place is free. Besides this, there are Huts erected without the House, filled with them, where they sometimes go to sacrifice.

THEIR *Fetichs* or Priests pretend to have a Correspondence with the Devil, and to foretell what shall befall them in the Wars or otherwise, by a Sound proceeding from a Pot with three Holes in it. *Nyendaal* says, every Man is his own Priest, if it be not a Mistake in the printing, for, every Man has his own Priest, agreeable to what *Barbot* relates. Him they consult in all religious Matters, and act according to his Advice.

THE last Author adds, that it is an inviolable Law in Benin, that no Priest shall ever go out of the Country under very high Fines, and even Pain of Death, without the King's Leave; and they are, by the same Law, particularly forbid to go to *Oedo*, (or Benin) the Metropolis of the Kingdom; which seems very odd, considering how much the Priests are regarded here.

THE Priest of *Loabo*, a Town near the Mouth of *Ris Fermoza*, or Benin River, is very famous amongst them, on account of his Skill in Magic; which is so great, that he can command the Sea and Weather as he pleases, foretell the Arrival or Wreck of Ships, and the like. For this Reason the King gave him the Town of *Loabo*, with the Lands and Slaves belonging to it. This Priest is reckoned in the Rank of chief Sacrificers, and so dreaded by the People, that none dare to come near him, much less touch his Hand, the King's Envoys not excepted.

THIS is not the only Superstition among the Benin-Blacks. *Artus* informs us, that they are much afraid of a certain Sort of Birds, it being Death to do them the least Prejudice. Persons are appointed to attend them, and feed them, carrying Meats to a certain Place in the Mountains, where they leave it for that Purpose.

THE Religion of the Benin-Blacks is much the same with that in common along the Coasts, Westward, consisting in the Worship of *Fetichs*, or Images. *Nyendaal* says, they take every Thing extraordinary in Nature for a God, and make Offerings to it; such as Elephants Teeth, Claws, dead Men's Skulls, and Skeletons. These they consider as subordinate Deities, or Mediators between them and the principal Deity; of whom several have no unjust Notions, holding him to be incorporeal, and therefore say it is absurd to make an Image of him. They call every Thing that is evil by the Name of the Devil, whom they do not represent by any visible Image; for to the same Idol they sometimes make Offerings as to God, and at others as to the Devil.

ACCORDING to *Dapper*, they have a Notion of a supreme, invisible Being, called *Orissa*, who created Heaven and Earth, and still governs the World by his Providence: But they reckon it unnecessary to worship him, being always good, while they seek to appease the Devil by Sacrifices.

THEY talk much of Apparitions of the Ghosts of their deceased Ancestors or Relations in their Sleep, warning them to make such and such Offerings; which, as soon as Day comes, they never fail to do; or, if unable, will borrow of others rather than neglect this Duty.

THEIR daily Offerings are not of great Value, being a few boiled Yams, mixed with Oil, laid before their Idols. Sometimes they offer a Cock, but then the *Fetich* has only the Blood, for they keep the Flesh to themselves.

THE great Men make annual Sacrifices, which are very expensive, and celebrated with great

* *Nyendaal*, in *Bosman's Description of Guinea*, p. 462.

impious, than the *Romanists*.

* Yet he says, but a few Lines before, that they profess to worship both Gods and Devils in human and brutal Images.

* *Nyendaal*, as before, p. 454.

* *Ogilby's Africa*, p. 477; and *Barbot's Description of Guinea*, p. 374.

* *Ogilby*, as before, p. 478.

* *Nyendaal*, as before, p. 454.

* *Artus*, in *de Bry's Ind. Orient.* vol. 2. Part. 6. p. 122.

* In this they are more reasonable, and less

* *Ogilby's Africa*, p. 454.

* *Nyendaal*, as before, p. 455, 1st fig.

* *Ogilby*, as before; and *Barbot*, as before,

* *Ogilby*, as before; and *Barbot*, as before,

* *Ogilby*, as before; and *Barbot*, as before,

* *Ogilby*, as before; and *Barbot*, as before,

* *Ogilby*, as before; and *Barbot*, as before,

Benin
Kingdom
Division of
Time.

THE People of *Benin* divide Time into Years, a turned into the Palace. The rest of the Day *Government*, Months, Weeks, and Days, each distinguished by a particular Name; but they reckon fourteen Months to the Year.

THEIR Sabbath happens every fifth Day, which is solemnly observed by the Great, with the Slaughter of Cows, Sheep, and Goats; while the Populace kill Dogs, Cats, and Chickens, or whatever they are able to purchase. Of all these, large Portions are distributed to the Poor, to enable them to keep the Festival.

Proof of dead
Kings.

THEY have as many Festivals as the Church of *Rome*. One Day in the Year they celebrate with great Expende, the Anniversary of their deceased Ancestors or Relations, in order to keep up their Memory.

On this Occasion, according to *Dapper*, they commonly sacrifice a great Number of Beasts, and even human Victims; who are commonly Malefactors sentenced to Death, and reserved for these Solemnities. If it happens they fall short of twenty-five, which is the requisite Number, the King orders his Officers to go in the Night about the Streets of *Ode*, and seize indifferently all such Persons as they meet carrying no Light. If the Persons so seized are rich in *Bijou*, they are allowed to redeem themselves; but if poor, they are sacrificed on the Day appointed. The Slaves of great Men, so seized, may be also ransomed, their Masters finding others in their Room. This Method of seizing Men turns greatly to the Advantage of the Priests, it being their Province to redeem the Persons so taken, and they make the People believe they have been sacrificed privately.

Coral Feast.

BUT their chief Festival is called, the *Coral Feast*. It is celebrated in *May*, and that is the only Day on which the King appears annually in Public. *Nyendaël*, who was present at the Ceremony in 1702, informs us, that he came magnificently dressed into the second Plain (of the Palace) where, under a rich Canopy, a Seat was placed for him, his Wives, and a great Number of his principal Officers ranged themselves round him. Soon after the Procession began, which being ended, the King removed from his Throne, in order to sacrifice to the Gods in the open Air, and thereby begin the Feast. This Action was accompanied with the universal and loud Acclamations of the People. After passing a Quarter of an Hour in this Manner, he returned to his former Place, where he sat two Hours in order to give the Remainder of the People Time to perform their Devotions. This done, he re-

b

2. The Government of Benin.

Government absolute. Composed of three Estates. Street Kings. Vice-Kings and Governors. The Priests. Officers of State. Order of the Coral Collar. Tragical Accident. Law of Inheritance. Punishment of Theft: Of Murder: Of Adultery. Five Methods of Purgation. Finis, how disposed of.

THE Inhabitants of the River *Benin* and the *Government* neighbouring Country have several Princes, and indeed each Nation is governed by its own King, though all are Vassals to the King of *Benin*, except those of *Awerrri*, (or *Ouaverre*) where the *Portuguese* live, and the Pirates of *Ufa*, neither of whom would ever submit to his Yoke.

THEY are all free Men, yet treated as Slaves by the King; which they are so far from taking as a Misfortune, that the Title of King's Slave is a particular Mark of Honour.

THE King governs arbitrarily, his Will being an absolute Law. Besides him there are three Estates, or Degrees.

THE first is composed of three Lords, or great Men, who are always near the Royal Person, and through them all Applications and Addresses are made, and the Answers returned. So that as they inform him only of what they think proper, and return such Answers as they please, the Power of the Government seems rested in their Hands; and the more so, in that, excepting a few, none are admitted into the King's Presence, much less allowed to speak with him.

THE second Order, or Estate, is composed of *Street Kings*, those, called here *Are de Rues*, or *Street Kings*; some of which preside over the Commonalty; others over the Slaves; others over military Affairs; others over Matters relating to Cattle, or the Fruits of the Earth. Scarce a Thing can be thought of, but what has its particular Supervisor.

OUT of these *Are de Rues* are chosen the Vice-Vice-Kings and Governors of Provinces subject to the

* *Nyendaël*, in *Bosman's Description of Guinea*, p. 456. *Description of Guinea*, p. 372.

† *Nyendaël*, as before, p. 465, & seq. ‡ So it is in *Turky*; but there those, who have the Administration of Affairs in the Government and Army, are really the Sultan's *Kais*, or Slaves.

* *Nyendaël*, as before, p. 430.

Benin Kingdom. King. These are all under the Command of the three Prime Grandees, to whom they are responsible on all Occasions, and by whose Recommendation they obtain their Posts.

The Factors. THE *Fiadors* (or *Viadors*) form the third Rank, or Estate.

Officers of State. THE Government of this Country is vested in the King and the three Lords of the first Order: The King is nominal Governor, the latter are so in Effect. Each Province has its particular Vice-Roy, who depends on the *supreme Junta*, or State-Triumvirate.

DAPPER's Account is somewhat more particular. According to this Author, the Government rests in the King and three chief Ministers, called *Great Fiadors*; that is, Intendants or Overseers: Besides the great Marshal of the Crown, who is intrusted with the Affairs relating to War, as the three others are with the Administration of Justice, and the Management of the Revenue; and all four are obliged to take the Circuits throughout the several Provinces, from Time to Time, to inspect into the Condition of the Country, and see good Order preserved. These great Ministers have their inferior Officers. The first is called the *Ongwa*; the second, *Osside*; and the third, *Arriken*. These reside constantly at Court, and all Addresses to the King are made through their Hands.

Order of the WHEN any are advanced to these three Degrees in the State, the King, as a Badge of that Honour, presents each with a String of Coral, which is equivalent to the Ensigns of an Order of Knighthood. This Mark of Distinction is also given to the *Mercaders*, or Merchants; the *Falladers*, or Intercessors; and the *Veillet*, or Elders.

THIS String they are obliged to wear constantly about their Necks, without laying it aside on any Account whatever; and should it be lost or stolen, the Punishment is no less than Death.

Coral-Chain. OR this the Author saw two Instances. A Negro, who, through Inadvertency, had suffered his Chain to be stolen, was executed without Delay; as was the Thief, who acknowledged the Robbery, and three more who were privy to it, and did not discover it; so that five Men were put to Death for a Chain of Coral, intrinsically not worth Two-pence.

THE second Instance was still more extraordinary, and happened, in 1700, at *Barbados*, where the Author then was. The Captain of a Portuguese Vessel, who staid to get-in his Debts, finding them come-in but slowly, caused a Trader,

who was his principal Debtor, to be arrested on board his Ship; but the Negro resisting endeavoured to escape. In the Scuffle with the Sailors, the Pilot got hold of his Chain of Coral, which he broke to Pieces and threw over-board. This Tragical so dispirited the Factor, that he quitted his Hold and surrendered himself: But soon after, finding the Pilot asleep, he, with a Blunderbuss, shot him through the Head. Not satisfied with this, he wounded the dead Body in several Places, and then threw-away his Knife, saying, That now he had taken his Revenge, and that it was indifferent to him what they did with him: *Per*, continued he, *when my Coral was thrown over-board I was a dead Man, and at present I am in the same Condition.* The Portuguese Captain did not venture to punish him, but delivered him to the Governor of the Place, who sent him up to *Benin*; where the King had him kept in Prison in order to be severely punished, in Presence of the next Portuguese who should come there. The Author saw the Negro the same Year, and as he left *Benin*, two Portuguese Ships came to demand Justice for the murdered Pilot, which, the Author made no doubt, was granted them.

THE King keeps these Corals in his own Possession; and the counterfeiting, or having any of them in a Person's Possession, without his Grant, is punished with Death. They are made of a pale-red, coëtile Earth, or Stone, very well glazed, and resemble red, speckled Marble.

THE Right of Inheritance devolves to the eldest Son, who, if he be a Person of Condition, is obliged to present a Slave, by Way of Heriot, to the King, and another to the three great Lords, with a Petition that he may succeed his Father in the same Quality; which the King accordingly grants, and he is declared sole Heir to his Father. He allows his younger Brothers what he pleases: But if his Mother be alive, he assigns her a Maintenance suitable to her Condition; and suffers her besides to keep what she has gotten from his Father. His Father's other Widows, especially those who have not had Children, he takes home, if he likes them, and uses them as his own; if not, he sets them to work, in order to subsist more creditably, but entertains no matrimonial Correspondence with them. Of this last Sort here are as great Numbers, as of Prostitutes in other Countries.

IF the Deceased has no Children, the Brother inherits, or failing him, the next of Kin. If no lawful Heir appears, the Succession falls to the King.

* Nyenduel, in *Bosman's Description of Guinea*, p. 475, &c. seq.

same, p. 449.

* See *Ogilby's Africa*, p. 474; and *Barbot's Description of Guinea*, p. 367.

matel, as before, p. 436, & seq.

* The same, p. 437

* The

* Ny-

*Benin
Kingdom.
Punishment
of Theft.*

CRIMES are punished in the following Manner. Theft is not common here, the *Benin* Negroes not being of so pilfering a Disposition as at other Places: However, if the Thief is taken in the Fact, he is obliged to restore the stolen Goods, and is besides fined; which Fine if he be unable to pay, he suffers corporally. If the Robbery be committed against a *Grantee*, or any of the Government, he is put to Death; but this seldom happens.

Of Murder. MURDER happens yet seldomer here than Theft. It is punished with Death: But if the Murderer should chance to be the King's Son, or a *Grantee*, he is banished to the utmost Borders of the King's Territories, where he is conveyed under a strong Guard; and none of these Exiles being ever seen again, or heard of, the Negroes take it for granted they are sent to the *Elyphan-Fields*. If a Person with his Fist, undesignedly and by Accident, kills another, and the Deceased did not bleed, nor his Death seem violent, the Offender may purchase his Life, by first burying the Dead creditably at his own Charges, and afterwards producing a Slave to suffer in his Stead. This Slave he is obliged to touch on his Knees, with his Forehead, as he is killed; after which he is to pay a great Sum to the three Lords; which being done he gains his Freedom, and the Friends of the Deceased are obliged to rest satisfied.

ALL other Crimes (Adultery excepted) are atonable with Money, and the Fine is proportioned to the Nature of the Offence. If the Criminal be insolvent, he is subject to a corporal Punishment.

Of Adultery. ADULTERY is here punished several Ways. Amongst the Commonalty, if a Man suspects his Wife, he tries all Means to surprize her in the Fact, without which he cannot punish her. If he succeeds, he is intitled to all the Effects of the Adulterer, whether in Slaves, *Bôjû* or Money, Teeth or Merchandize, all which he has a Right to seize, and convert to his own Use. The offending Wife, after a hearty coddling, is turned out of Doors to seek her Fortune: But no Person being fond of marrying her after this, she retires to some Place where she is not known, passing for a Widow, to get another Husband; or else she maintains herself by a Trade that she has no need to learn.

THE Rich revenge themselves (in Case of Adultery) much the same Way; but the Woman's Relations, to avoid the Scandal that might accrue to their Family, reconcile the offended Husband with a good Sum of Money, and get her restored to Favour. After this she passes for

as virtuous a Woman as before, and is treated with all matrimonial Endearments in her Turn.

THE Governors punish Adultery more severely; for if they surprize any debauching their Wives, they kill both the offending Parties on the Spot where they committed the Crime, and cast their dead Bodies on the Dunghil, exposed a Prey to the wild Beasts. These Severities are so effectual, that this Offence is seldom committed here.

WHERE Accusations are not clearly proved, the Accused is obliged to purge himself by Trial. This is practised five different Ways, four of which take Place in slight Offences and civil Causes, and the fifth in Case of High Treason and capital Crimes. This last Trial is only allowed to Persons of Dignity, and that too by the King's especial Order.

THE first Sort of Purgation is in the following Manner: The Accused are carried to the Priest, who greases a Cock's Feather, and therewith pierces the Tongue. If it passes easily through, it is a Sign the Man is innocent, and the Wound made by the Quill will soon close, and heal without Pain; but if the Quill sticks in his Tongue, it is a bad Sign, and he is pronounced guilty.

THE second Trial is thus: The Priest takes an oblong Clod of Earth, in which he sticks seven or nine Cock's Quills, which the suspected Person must draw-out successively. If they come-out easily, it is a Sign of Innocence; if not, the Prisoner is convicted as guilty.

THE third Trial of Innocence, is made by spurring a certain Juice of green Herbs in the Eyes of the Accused. If it does him no Hurt, he is acquitted; if his Eyes become red and inflamed, he is condemned, and obliged to pay the Fine laid on him.

IN the fourth Trial, the Priest strokes the Prisoner three Times over the Tongue with a red-hot, Copper Arm-Ring; and from his being burnt or not pronounces Judgment.

THE Author saw all these Trials made, but all the Accused were declared guilty, and not without Reason; for it would be strange indeed if red-hot Copper should not burn the Tongue. The fifth and last Proof, which does not happen once in twenty Years, is as follows:

If a Person be accused of a very great Crime of which he is desirous to clear himself by Oath, the King's Leave being first obtained, the Accused is brought to a certain River; to which is ascribed the strange Quality of gently waiving over every innocent Person plunged therein safe to Land, though ever so unskilled in Swimming;

* That must be the Sex. See before, p. 92. a. *U f. 31.*

* The same, p. 443, *U f. 34.*

Nyendari, in Bosman's Description of Guinea, p. 448.

Benin Kingdom.

and, on the other Side, to sink the Guilty to the Bottom, though ever such good Swimmers: For, on throwing-in the guilty Person, the Water grows turbulent like a Whirlpool, and never rests till he is at the Bottom, when the Water returns to its former Tranquillity.

Fines how disposed.

ALL Fines charged on Crimes are divided as follows: First, the Person injured by Theft is satisfied out of it; then the Governor has his Share; and last of all, the three great Lords before-mentioned. The King only, whose Ear it never reaches, has no Part in it. If the three great Lords are contented with what is sent, then it is well; but they frequently send-back their Shares to the Vice-Roy, informing them, that the Fines are too small, and that they have failed in their Duty; so that they are often obliged to send double the Sum to appease them.

3. The King, his State, Revenues, &c.

Nomination of a Successor. The King, how proclaimed. His Brathers put to Death. His Anniversary Processions. His Attendants. His Slaves. The Queen-Mother. His Audiences. His Revenues. His Forces: Their Weapons and Cloathing.

Successor announced.

THE Ceremony of inaugurating a new King at Benin, is, according to *Dapper*, performed thus:

WHEN the reigning Monarch finds himself departing, he sends for the *Ongwea*, one of his chief Ministers, whom he commands, upon Pain of Death, to keep his last Will secret till after his Decease, the Purport of which is, to appoint one of his Sons for his Successor. As soon as the King expires, that Minister immediately takes into his Custody all his Treasure and Effects, and receives the Homage of all his Sons on their Knees; each studying how to please him, as each is yet uncertain who is appointed Successor.

THE Time approaching to proclaim the new King, the *Ongwea* sends for the great Marshal of the Crown, who, as soon as he comes into his Presence, asks what he desires of him; and being told by the *Ongwea* the late King's Commands as to the Succession, the great Marshal causes the *Ongwea* to repeat the same five or six Times; after which, he returns home and shuts himself up, without declaring to any Person what he has heard from the *Ongwea*.

King proclaimed.

THE *Ongwea* then sends for the Son of the late King, designates his Successor, and orders

him to wait on the great Marshal at his House, and desire of him that he would give a King to the State; after which the Prince returns to the Palace, as the great Marshal directs him. Five or six Days after the Marshal returns to the Palace, to concert Measures with the *Ongwea* for proclaiming the new King. After causing him again to repeat the late King's Injunctions as to the Succession, and asking if he does not mistake the Name of the Son, they both send for the young Prince, to whom, after making him kneel-down, they communicate his Father's Will. The young Prince returning them Thanks for their Fidelity in the Discharge of their Trust, rises-up; and being immediately invested with the Royal Ornaments, is proclaimed King of Benin, and receives the Homage of his Grandees and People upon their Knees.

WHEN thus inaugurated, the young King usually retires to the Village of *Osejese*, not far from *Ode* (or Benin) where he keeps his Court till he is sufficiently instructed in the Rules of Government. *Barbot* adds, that the Queen-Mother, the *Ongwea*, and great Marshal, are Regents in *Ode* during that Time; which being expired, he is brought by the great Marshal from *Osejese*, and put in Possession of the Palace and Royal Authority. After this, he endeavours to cut-off all his Brothers, to secure himself against Competitors. Of late some of them were spared; but they made such ill Use of that Favour, by conspiring with the Friends of some condemned and banished *Finders*, that the present King, by smothering, or otherwise, put to Death all his Brethren by a public Order. Some report, that he forced them to hang themselves, because none must lay violent Hands on the Blood Royal; yet after their Death, he ordered them to be buried with great State and Magnificence.

NTENDAE, as hath been observed already, says, that the King of Benin shews himself to the People yearly, only at the Coral Feast; but *Artus* affirms, that he goes in Procession through the City, twice a Year. At these Seasons, he displays all his Grandeur, appearing attended with above six hundred Wives, though not all legitimate: The Grandees here have eighty or ninety, and even the poorest ten or twelve.

ACCORDING to *Dapper*, the King of Benin, at a certain Time of the Year, rides-out to be seen by his People. He is that Day mounted on one of his best Horses, (which are but ordinary at best) richly equipped and habited, followed by

* *Nyendae*, in *Husman's Description of Guinea*, p. 451, & seq.

and Ears with Raes. * See *Ogilby's Africa*, p. 477; and *Barbot's Description of Guinea*, p. 371, & seq.

* *Artus*, in *de By's Ind. Orient.* vol. 2. Part. 6. p. 121, & seq.

Benin

Kingdom.

three or four hundred of his chief Ministers and Officers of State; some on Horseback and some on Foot, armed with Shields and Javelins, preceded and followed by his Musicians. At the Head of this Royal Procession are led some tame Leopards and Tygers in Chains, attended by Dwarfs and Mutes. It commonly ends in the Death of ten or twelve Slaves, sacrificed in Honour of the King and bought by the People^a.

Not Accurately.

ARTUS says, the King has many Nobles to attend him; who, when they go to Court, ride on Horseback, sitting like Women on Side-Saddles^b, with their Feet on one Side. A Servant leads the Horse, and on each Side walks a Slave, on whom they lean. Behind follow a Train of Slaves and Servants, some carrying an Umbrello over their Lord's Head: The rest march in Order, some beating Drums, others playing on Horns or Flutes.

THE Nobles of the first Rank, besides these Instruments, have one peculiar to themselves. This is a Kind of Nets carried by their Servants, resembling the Hand-Nets used by our Fishermen; which contains something, that, when struck with the Hand, rattles like Nuts in a Box.

His Slaves.

THE Slaves belonging to the King, of either Sex, are very numerous; for you meet them every where, carrying on their Heads various Sorts of Fruits, Palm-Oil, Water, and Grass for the Horses, all for the Use of the Palace. Sometimes the King sends a Feast to some Nobleman, which is carried in great State by his Majesty's Servants, several Persons going before with white Staves to clear the Way, and keep-off the Populace^c.

The Queen-Mother.

THE King of Benin, in Barbot's Time, was a young Man of an affable Behaviour; his Mother was living, to whom he paid great Respect. She dwelt in a separate Palace, without the City of Ouidé, (or Benin) where she kept her Court, and was served by her own Officers and Attendants. The King often consulted her on Affairs of State, by the Intervention of his Ministers; for it would endanger an Insurrection if the King went to see her himself, it being contrary to the Laws^d.

His Associates.

NYENDIAEL had an Audience, perhaps of the same King, who was of an affable Mein and about forty Years old. The Author stood, according to Custom, thirty Paces distant, but desired he might have Leave to approach nearer to his Majesty; which, though unusual, the King,

a with a Smile, granted, and beckoning to him, he advanced to within eight or ten Paces of his Person. There was no Person else in the Hall, besides his three great Lords and a Negro with a drawn Sword in his Hand, who looked as fierce as a Cabin-Entry.

WHATEVER any one has to say to the King, must be first spoken to these three Lords, who then report it to him and bring his Answer, going to and fro; so that no-body can tell whether they faithfully report the Messages on either Side.

ON the King's left-Hand, against a fine Tapestry, the Author saw several white scoured Elephants'-Teeth, on Pedestals of Ivory, in which Manner almost all the King's Gods are placed within his House. He presented the King with a Silk Night-Gown, with which his Majesty was highly pleased. All Presents are brought covered with Mats, several Negroes, with white Staves, marching both before and behind. All who meet this Procession must get out of the Way or be soundly beaten. This Precaution is taken to prevent all Opportunity of poisoning the King's Goods, or killing him^e.

THE King's Revenues are very considerable. His Territories are large, and ruled by many Governors; each of whom knows how many Bags of *Béjis* he must pay to the King, all which amount to a vast Sum. Lesser Governors, instead of Money, pay their Taxes in Cattle, Sheep, Poultry, Yams, or Cloths; in short, whatever is necessary for his Household: So that he is at no Expence that Way, and may lay-by his pecuniary Revenue untouched.

HERE are no Duties on Goods exported or imported, but every one pays yearly a certain Sum to the Governor of the Place where he lives for the Liberty of trading. The Governor sends Part of it to the King; which, being settled, he knows how much remains annually to himself.

THE Europeans here are well used; for the Customs payable on every Ship to the King, the three great Lords, and the Governors of the Place where they trade, with the Fees of the *Mercedors* and *Fiadors*, do not all together amount to above six Pound Sterling, for which you become entirely free to trade^f.

DAPPER says, the King of Benin is reported able to raise, in one Day, twenty thousand Men, and in Time of Need, eighty or an hundred thousand: So that he is formidable to all his Neighbours, and none participates of the

^a Ocell's *Africa*, p. 475; and Barbot's Description of Guinea, p. 370.

in de Brey's *Ind. Orient.* vol. 2. Part. 6. p. 121.

Barbot's Description of Guinea, p. 464, & seq.

p. 369.

^b Gynæcius.

^c Artus.

^d Barbot, as before, p. 368.

^e Nyendiael, in

^f The same, p. 460, & seq. And Barbot, as before,

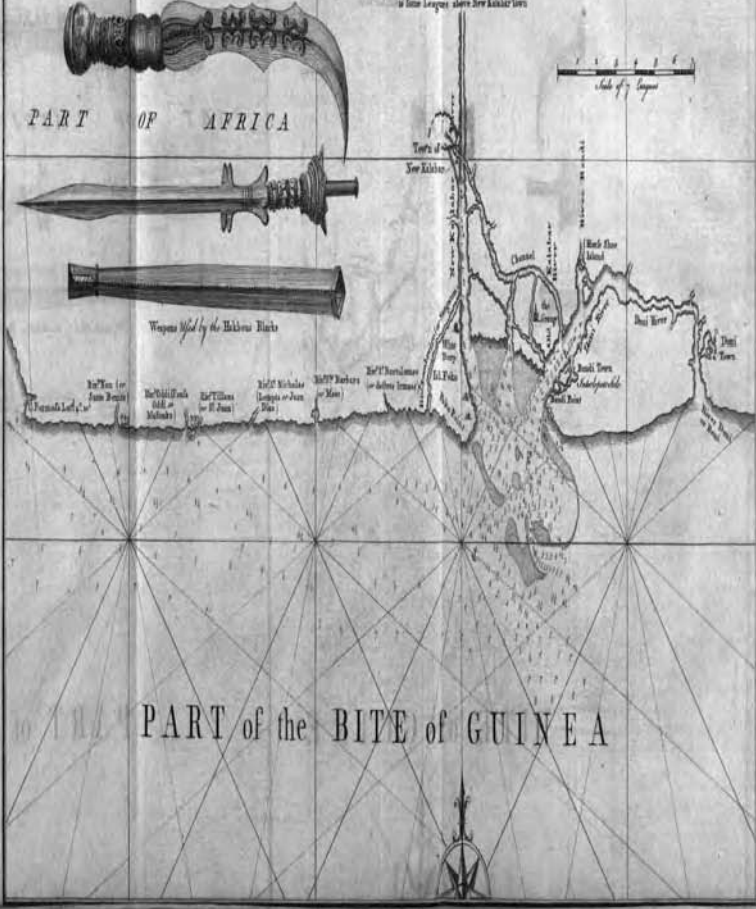
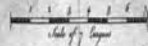
An Accurate MAP, of KALBAR RIVER,
 Commonly called KALABAR or RIO REAL,
 And the Adjacent Coast, drawn as it is by several Planters.

The Country of the Bakhons,
 is four Leagues above New Kinkier Town.

PART OF AFRICA



Weapons used by the Bakhons Blacks



PART of the BITE of GUINEA

1699. Booby in War but the General or Field-Marshal, called *Owe-Ajerri*, or *Siafiri*. The same Author adds, that in Battle they preserve good Discipline and Order, none daring to quit his Post under Pain of Death*. But *Nyendael* affirms, that although they are much infested by Pirates and Robbers, and often invaded by their Neighbours, they are wholly ignorant of War; having, when drawn into the Field, no Discipline or Conduct, nor indeed so much as Generals, or Officers. They are such Cowards, that nothing but Necessity will make them fight; and then they defend themselves so ill, that they are soon defeated or taken Prisoners.

Their Weapons and Cloathing.

THEIR Weapons are Cutlasses and Hangers, small Poniards, *Assagays*, with Bows and Arrows, the latter of which are poisoned*. They

also Shields, but so light, as made of Bamboos, that they cannot ward-off any forcible Blow; so that they are rather for Ornament than Defence*. According to *Dapper*, the Nobility, when they go into the Field, clothe themselves with Scarlet, as a Mark of Eminency. Others have Gorgets of Elephants and Leopards Teeth, and high red Caps, wrought and quilted, with Leopard and Civet-Cat Skins, to which hangs a long Horse-Tail for Ornament. The common Soldiers usually wear on the lower Part of their Bodies a Cloth as fine as Silk, the rest being naked*. The same Writer adds a great many other Things, not mentioned by other Authors; but we are cautious of making use of him, as being censured by *Nyendael*.

See page 104 Kalabari.

C H A P. II.

Abstract of a VOYAGE to New Kalabar, Bandi, and Doni Rivers, in 1699.

By Messieurs James Barbot, and John Grazilhier.

Friends,

JAMES BARBOT was Brother to Mr. John Barbot, Author of the Description of Guinea, often quoted in this and the preceding Volume. He was Supercargo and Part Owner with John, and other Adventurers, of London, in the *Albion* Frigate of three hundred Tons and twenty-four Guns, a Ten per Cent. Ship*, which made the Voyage to New Kalabar, called by the Portuguese, *Rio Real*, in the Year above-mentioned. Joint Supercargo† in the same Ship went Mr. John Grazilhier, whose Remarks are given in the next Section, augmented by those which he made in four succeeding Voyages to the same Parts. The Chart, which accompanies these Journals, was taken on the Spot by skilful Pilots, assisted by the Natives.

S E C T. I.

Mr. James Barbot's VOYAGE to New Kalabar.

They leave the Downs: Come to Great Frederickburg. French Ships on the Coast. El Mina. Cape Corse. Anamabo. Winneba. Akkra. Bad Weather. Sailing difficult. Arrive at New Kalabar. Captain Edwards here.

The Albion in Danger. Anchor at Bandi. Confer with the King, about Trade: He comes on board. Kalabar Nobility. Duties and Taxes. Disorderly Eating. Slaves procured.

JANUARY the thirteenth, 1698-9, he sailed from the Downs in the *New Albion* Frigate, of three hundred Tons and twenty-four Guns, a Ten per Cent. Ship, or private Trader, belonging to the Merchants of London, passing in Sight of *Madera*, *Cape Verde*, and *Cape Misurado*. February the twenty-fifth, they anchored before *Rio Segre*, where they staid to take-in Wood, Water, and Provisions. The Author found King *Peter* alive and well here, but got few Teeth, they being dear.

MARCH the twentieth, they departed, and April the eighth, they anchored before *Great Frederickburg* at *Cape Tres Puntas*. Here they were received civilly by the *Prussian* General, who acquainted them, that there was but little Trade on the Coast, on account of the Wars amongst the Natives, fomented by the Dutch in order to engross the Trade to themselves. He likewise told *Barbot*, that six Weeks before, in his Return from *Cape Lopez* hither, he had been

* See *Ogilby's Africa*, p. 474.

† *Nyendael*, in *Barbot's Description of Guinea*, p. 457. Description of Guinea, p. 455.

‡ The same, p. 381.

* *Dapper* says, they are poisoned by the *Fetifera*, or Priests.

* *Ogilby*, as before.

* See *Barbot's*

1699. attacked by a Pirate, whom he obliged to shear-
off; and that there were two or three Vessels of
that Sort cruising about Cape Lopez and St. Tome.

April the tenth, a small Portuguese Bark came
to anchor by them. The Master, who was a
Black, said he had been three Weeks from St.
Tome, and that about three Months before, he
had seen four tall French Ships there, bound from
the Coast of Guinea, with Slaves purchased at
Whidah, commanded by the Chevalier Dancou.

French
Ships.

THESE Ships were sent by the French King,
with a particular Commission to purchase Slaves
in Guinea, to indemnify the Freebooters of St.
Domingo for their Pretensions to the Booty taken
at Cortegena by M. de Pointis and du Casse, by
giving them Slaves instead of Money; and there-
by engaging them to return to their Settlement at
St. Domingo, which they had abandoned. It was
agreed to sell them these Slaves at two hundred and
fifty Livres a Head at St. Domingo, which procured
their Return: Yet these Slaves cost near fifty
Crown a Head at Whidah, being then scarce.

THE Blacks at Cape Tres Puntas having di-
verted the Channel of the fresh Water ashore,
the Prussian General, on Complaint, gave Or-
ders to let them have Water, and sent some
of his Bricklayers to set-up their Coppers on
board.

THE Master of the Portuguese Bark begged
their Convey to Cape Corse. Here they had
Abundance of their Men sick, and some died,
the Weather being intolerably hot. They could
get little Provisions here, but a few Goats,
which were very dear; only they bought from
the Portuguese, one Goat, one Hog, and seven
Chickens for five Attis in Gold. They found
the Horse-Beans they had brought from London
to subsist their Slaves, to the Value of an hun-
dred Pounds, were spoiled and rotten.

El Mina.

APRIL the seventeenth, they found them-
selves off the Castle of Mina, and saw in the
Road seven Sail, three or four of them tall Ships;
amongst which, two were Frigats of thirty
Guns and an hundred and thirty Men each,
kept as Cruizers on the Coast. They had lately
taken three Zealand Interlopers, one of which
carried thirty-six Guns and made a stout Resis-
tance, but the Captain was to be tried for his
Life. One of these Frigats, having been two
Years on the Coast, was about to return to Hol-
land with a thousand Marks of Gold.

Cape Corse.

THE eighteenth, they anchored in Cape Corse
Road, just by two English Ships, in eight Fa-
thom Water, muddy, sandy Ground. The Por-
tuguese Vessel that came with them from Cape

Tres Puntas was set adrift; his Cable breaking;
and sending his Boat to weigh the Anchor, the
Weather being windy, it overlet, and he lost
three Men. He could get no Corn at Cape
Corse, it being dear on the Coast.

Portuguese
Kilobar.

APRIL the twenty-first, they sailed, and
came to Anchor at Anamabo, where they pur-
chased, with much Trouble and at a dear Rate,
a Quantity of Indian-Wheat, and sold many
Perpets and much Powder, paying the excel-
sive Price of three Attis for every Chest of
Corn, but having lost their Stock of Horse-
Beans, they were obliged to buy at any Rate.
The Blacks here put a great Value on Perpets in
painted Wrappers, and Oil-Cloths with gilt
Leads, with large, painted Arms of England.

MAY the eleventh, they departed from Anamabo,
and passing-by Apang and Wunneba, one a Dutch,
the other an English Fort, the fifteenth, arrived
at Akra. Here they staid till the twenty-
trading for Gold, Slaves, and some Teeth.

THE twenty-sixth, as they were we-
their small Bar, the Cable and Buoy-Rope be-
so that they were forced to sail, leaving the
chor behind, which had fastened in the Rocks.
Having purchased sixty-five Slaves along the
Gold-Coast, besides Slaves and Teeth, they left
Akra, steering towards New Kalabar, in order
to buy more Slaves.

MAY the twenty-seventh, they found them-
selves, by Observation, in the Latitude of five
Degrees four Minutes North, moderate Wea-
ther, the Wind South-West by West, being fol-
lowed by their small Sloop under-sail: At Night
it blew so hard, that to keep her Company they
were forced to lower their Sails. The twenty-
ninth, they had a heavy Gale with Rains, and a
rough Sea, being by Estimation near Cape Fer-
mosa. Next Day, they came within two Leagues
of Land, in ten Fathom, muddy Sand, the Tide
bearing-in for Shore. They guessed they had ran
an hundred and ten Leagues from Akra, and
found they had missed Cape Ferosa; the Tide
having, to their Surprise, driven them fifteen
Leagues to the North-West of it, into the
Gulph of Benin, which was both a Surprise and
Disappointment. The thirty-first, they anchored
about a League and an half from Shore, by Ob-
servation in four Degrees five Minutes North
Latitude. This Day, they found the Tide run
very swift to North, at half a League an Hour;
the Land lying North and South, very flat and
low, and all over woody. Ever since they left
Akra, the Weather was continually gloomy,
with great Rains.

* Barbier's Description of Guinea, p. 455.
before, p. 456.

† Thirty-two thousand Pounds.

* Barbier, 22

1699.

J. Barber.

Faintly dis-
tinguished.

Those who say the Navigation in Guinea is easy from this Month to August are much mistaken, and ought to carry a double Quantity of Anchors: For the Sea generally runs high, and the Wind at South South-West, very fresh, blowing in Shore, attended with heavy, long Rains, which strain a Ship continually when at Anchor; and the Ground is very rocky in many Places, as at *Seffre, Anim, Cape Tres Puntas, and Akkra*. It is thought also, that the heavy Showers abate the Surges, but they found the contrary, for during five Weeks past they had nothing but a high Sea, and continual dark Weather, with Days and Nights, as raw and cold as in the English Channel in September.

From June the first to the fifteenth, they continued turning up, and anchoring along the Coast, with the Winds contrary at South-West. The sixteenth, steering South-East in eight and nine Fathom, they reached Cape *Formosa*, which is not easy to be known. Coming from the North-West, at two o'Clock, they passed *Rio Nan*, steering East; at four they passed *Rio Oddy* in seven Fathom; at six, at Night, they anchored in six Fathom North North-East and South South-West of *Rio Tilana*, or *St. Juan*. The seventeenth, proceeding East along Shore in six and seven Fathom, at nine they had *Rio St. Nicholas* to the North; at eleven, *Rio St. Barbara*; at one o'Clock they passed the River *St. Bartholomew*; at half an Hour after two, *Rio Simbreire*; and at three they came to Anchor between the latter and *New Kalabar* River in five Fathom and an half, muddy, by Estimation North and South off *Foko* Point.

Come to New
Kalabar.

The eighteenth, by Day-break, they sent their Boat ashore for Intelligence, and to bring-off some Blacks to pilot them into *Kalabar*. By the three Men in the Boat they sent Samples of some Merchandize. They saw a Sail in *Bandi* River as far as they could see. The Tide running East at ten, they moored their Ship about four Leagues from Shore, supposing they must lie there and trade with their Sloop and long Boat; thinking it impossible to find a proper Channel to carry so large a Ship, drawing fourteen Foot and an half Water. The twenty-first, at Day-break, their Warp broke, which was moored at South-East, it blowing hard all Night from South South-West, and South-West by South, the Weather very cold, and the Ebb strong. Here they found the Month of June to be a Diabolo, as the Portuguese Master at *Cape Tres Puntas* told them. The twenty-third, at one, there came a large Canoe with nine black Rowers, besides other Blacks, and the Master of their long Boat, which a losing its Grappling, was forced back to *Bandi* River.

In this Canoe *William*, the King of *Bandi*, had sent them two or three of his Pilots with Certificates of several English Captains they had piloted safely in, some of whose Ships drew thirteen Fathom. Their Men reported, that the Ship they perceived was English, commanded by one *Edwards*, who had gotten his Complement of five hundred Slaves in three Weeks Time, and was ready to sail to the *West Indies*. The Master added, that as soon as the Blacks saw their Ship off at Sea, they immediately went-up the River to buy Slaves, besides an hundred and fifty that were actually at *Bandi*-Town when he left it, and that King *William* had engaged to him, to furnish them with a Cargo of five hundred lusty, young Slaves; on which they resolved, if possible, to carry the Ship up the River for greater Expedition.

The twenty-fourth, early, the Weather being fair, they set about weighing their only Anchor, but the Cable, though a new one, gave way, which obliged them to cut it away; and at one, in the Afternoon, the Warp broke, so that they were forced to get under Sail to save the Ship and their Lives, keeping the Ship's Head at South-East, to weather the Breakers on the Bar. Thus they plied to and fro, foundering. At three o'Clock, being about three Leagues from *Foko* and *Bandi* Points, they fell on a sudden into three Fathom and an half, then to three, two and three Quarters, and at last to two and an half. They all then concluded the Ship lost, her Stern often touching the Ground, very violently at the third Stroke; but happening to set all their Sails, the passed-over (the Bar) and got-in well. Thus sailing for two Hours from three to four, and from four to three Fathom, uneven Soundings, they suddenly came to two and an half, and the Ship touched Ground slightly; but the Sea being smooth, she received no Hurt.

At five o'Clock, they got the Opening of *Bandi* River, and the Sight of Captain *Edwards*'s Ship riding before the King's Town, at which Moment they steered North-East directly for the River, and got to Anchor the same Tide in fourteen Fathom before *Bandi* Town, on a small Anchor of three hundred Weight, the only one they had left; which being too light, and the Tide very strong, it was a long Time before it could fasten. Soon after, Captain *Edwards* sent them another of six hundred Weight for that Night only, till he could spare the large one he had promised. The black Pilots were of no Use to them in this Distress, pleading they never were

1699. sensible of so shallow Water on the Bar; and that it was at the Neap-Tide, and at low Water too, that they had passed so luckily. Had they, (as *Edwards* told them after) when they brought the two Capes to bear East and West, steered immediately North, and North by East, instead of North-West by North, and North North-West, they had found from five to eight Fathom Channel, at the Place where he stood with his Pinnace.

Confer with the King

JUNE the twenty-fifth, in the Morning, they saluted the black King of *Great Bandi* with seven Guns. The Officers went ashore the same Day to pay him their Compliment, and settle Trade: But he gave them to understand, he expected a Bar of Iron per Head for each Slave more than Captain *Edwards* had paid; and also objected much against their Basons, Tankards, yellow Beads, and some other Goods, as being of no Demand at that Time. The twenty-sixth, they had another Conference with the King and chief Men about Trade, which lasted till three in the Afternoon, without any Effect; they insisting on thirteen Bars of Iron for a Male, and ten for a Female Slave, alleging their Scarcity from the Numbers lately exported. The King treated them at Supper. The twenty-seventh, he sent for a Barrel of Brandy of thirty-five Gallons, at two Bars of Iron per Gallon. At ten they went ashore, but could conclude no Agreement. The twenty-eighth, they sent their Boat up the River to the Town of *Dani* (about twenty-five Miles from *Bandi*) for Provisions and Refreshments. The next Day they had three great Jars of Palm-Oil; but being foul Weather, did not go ashore.

Aloud Trade.

JUNE the thirtieth, they had a new Conference, but without Effect. *Pepperell*, the King's Brother, told them, "He was sorry they would not accept his Proposals, which was not his Fault, he having a great Esteem for the Whites, who had much enriched him by Trade: That the Price he insisted on proceeded from the Country People holding-up the Price of Slaves at the Inland Markets, on seeing so many large Ships resort to *Bandi*; but to moderate Matters, he would be contented with thirteen Bars for the Men, and nine Bars and two Bras Rings for the Women Slaves, and proportionably for Boys and Girls." So they parted without Conclusion.

But next Day, the King sending for them ashore, the Trade was concluded on the Terms *Pepperell* had offered, viz. thirteen Bars a-Head for the Males, and nine for the Females; the King promising to come on-board the Day fol-

lowing to regulate it, and to receive his Duties. The same Day they took a large Shark, which was given to the Blacks of *Bandi* to seal on. Their Pinnace returned the same Night from *Dani*, and brought a Slave purchased for ten Bars and a Pint Tankard; and a Cow which cost an hundred and fifty Bras Rings.

Pepperell to Kalabar.

JULY the second, after a heavy Rain all Morning, at two o'Clock the King came on-board in their Boat, attended by all his *Kahyirs* and Officers in three large Canoes; and as he entered the Ship, was saluted with seven Guns. He had on an old-fashioned scarlet Coat, laced with Gold and Silver, very rusty, and a fine Hat on his Head, but bare-footed, all his Attendants paying him great Respect: For since their Coming, none of the Natives durst trade with them till the King had agreed. They had a long Discourse with his Majesty and *Pepperell* concerning the Rates of Goods, and the King's Customs, and found *Pepperell* a sharp, talkative Blade. They plied their Guests with Punch and Brandy, that the Company, being about fourteen in Number, besides the King, grew very noisy. At last Matters were adjusted, and the King ordered the public Crier to proclaim a Permission of Trade. This Proclamation was made with the Sound of Trumpets of Elephants Teeth, like those on the *Gold-Coast*. The Crier had sixteen Bras Rings for his Fee.

The Blacks here are ready enough to find Excuses and Objections for breaking a verbal Agreement; and not having the Art of Reading or Writing, Strangers are forced to comply with their Impositions this Way. They gave the King and his Officers the usual Presents, viz.

To the King, a Hat, a Firelock, and nine Bunches of Beads instead of a Coat.

To Captain *Forty*, the King's General, Cap. *Kalabar* *New* *Forty*; Captain *Pepperell*; Captain *Bailan*; Alderman *Bang*; my Lord *Willyby*; Duke of *Monmouth*; drunken *Harry*, and some others, two Firelocks, eight Hats, and nine narrow Guinea Stuffs. They also adjusted with them the Reduction of their Goods into Bars of Iron, as the standard Coin, viz.

Goods	Bars
One Bunch of Beads	1
Four Strings of Rings, ten Rings each	1
Four Copper Bars	1
One Piece of narrow Guinea Stuff	1
One Piece of broad <i>Hamburg</i>	1
One Piece of <i>Nicoenes</i>	3
Bras Rings	1
And so per Rate for every other Sort of Goods.	

Barkot's Description of Guinea, p. 458.

The same, p. 459.

1699. THEY also regulated the Price of Provisions a by Means of their armed Sloop; in which Time they got on-board six hundred and forty-eight Slaves of all Sexes and Ages, including the sixty-five they had on the *Geld-Craft*, all fresh and found, very few exceeding forty Years of Age; besides Provision of Yams, Goats, Hops, Fowls, Wood and Water, some Cows and Calves. As for Fish, they found little in the River, which was a great Loss to them; for they were forced to furnish the Crew (several of whom were ill of Colics, and some dead) with fresh Meat from Land, at a great Expence, most of their salt Provisions and Biskuit being spent.

Page 110
Kalabar.

Provisions	Bars
Sixty King's Yams	- - - 1
One hundred and sixty Slaves Yams	- - - 1
—For fifty thousand Yams to be delivered.	
A Butt of Water	- - - 2 Rings
The Length of Wood ready cut	- - - 7 Bars
A Goat	- - - 1
A Cow, according to the Size	- - - 8 or 10
A Hog	- - - 2
A Calf	- - - 8
A Jar of Palm-Oil	- - - 14

Barbott and
Loans.

THEY paid the King's Duties in Goods, five hundred Slaves to be purchased at two Copper Rings a-Head. They also advanced to the King, by Way of Loan, the Value of an hundred and fifty Bars of Iron in sundry Goods; and to his principal Men three hundred Bars, each in Proportion to his Ability and Quality: To Captain Forty and another, forty Bars each; to the others, twenty. This they did in order forthwith to repair to the inland Markets, to buy Yams for greater Expedition, they usually employing nine or ten Days, in each Journey up the Country by the River, in their long Canoes.

Disorderly
Living.

AFTER these Regulations, Supper was served, and it was as diverting as shocking to see the Behaviour of the Guests at Table, both King and Subjects making as much Noise as possible, and emptying the Dishes as soon as set-down; every one filling his Pockets as well as his Belly, especially with Ham and Neats Tongue, without Regard to Rank or Decency. Having gorged themselves till they were ready to burst, they returned ashore, and were saluted with seven Guns.

Slaves pro-
cured.

JULY the third, the King returned to see Samples of Goods, as he pretended, but in reality they found his Visit was to fill his Belly again. At departing, they gave him three Guns. The fifth, he sent on-board thirty Slaves, Men and Women, of which they picked-out nineteen, and returned the rest. The sixth, he came with four Slaves, which, with the former nineteen, made twenty-three, for which they paid him two hundred and forty-seven Bars, three of the Women having each a Child. They allowed him for the twenty-four Heads, in Specie, an hundred and twelve Bars; in Rangos, ten Bars; in Beads, forty-six Bars; in Copper, fifty-one Bars; and in Guinea Stuffs, twenty-eight Bars. Two hundred and forty-seven Bars in all.

THEY traded thus till August the twenty-ninth at Bandi, as well as at New Kalabar and Doni,

Mr. John Grazilhier's VOYAGE from Bandi to New Kalabar and Doni, in 1699.

Sails to New Kalabar. Slaves procured, at several Trips. Idol Temple. Voyage to Doni. Trade at Kalabar. Price of Slaves. Their Quantity. Goods imported. Provisions for the Slaves. Their Character. Chart made of the River. Signal of departing. Directions for sailing out. A double Bar. Direction for entering.

THE twenty-second of July, 1699, Mr. Grazilhier sailed from Bandi Point with a small Cargo, in the armed Sloop, (mentioned in the former Section) for New Kalabar Town, in the *Ris Real*. At Night, he anchored before a Village called Bandi, situated in the North North-West Part of the Isle of *Interlopers*, where the Portuguese usually trade for Slaves. The twenty-third, he sailed with the Tide of Flood, and about twelve at Night came to anchor in Kalabar River, firing a Pederero; but no-body appeared on the Shore. July the twenty-fourth, he came before New Kalabar Town, and fired three Guns to salute the King; after which he made the usual Presents of a Cask of Brandy, a Barrel of Powder, and a Hat: To the Duke of Monmouth, a Hat; to the Duke of York, a Piece of Linen-Cloth; and to Captain John Alkmaers, another: These four being the chief Blacks here, who claim Presents before any one can trade. Having settled the Price of Slaves and Goods, he presented them a Hat, a Gun, and a Coat, and had Permission of Trade proclaimed as at Bandi, viz. twelve Bars a-Head for Men, nine for Women, and six for Girls or Boys.

JULY the twenty-fifth, he got fifteen Slaves on-board, all young People. The next Morning, above forty great Canoes filled-up the River from Kalabar to get Slaves inland. At Noon he

1699. sent the Ship back to *Bandi* with what Slaves a he had procured, and to bring back Goods to carry-on Trade at the Return of the Canoes. There, the twenty-seventh, at nine o'Clock at Night, came back with a great Number of Slaves, which he found were to be had sooner here than at *Bandi*; the *Kalabar* Blacks being but three or four Days out to the inland Markets, whereas at *Bandi*, they were eight and ten Days. July the twenty-ninth, the Sloop returning, he departed at Night for the Ship, at *Bandi*, with forty-four Slaves, though it rained heavily. Next Day, he came to *Foko* Point, five Leagues distant, South, from *Kalabar*; and, the thirty-first, arrived on board at ten in the Morning. To avoid the Banks which lie North off *Foko* Point, he steered East for half a League, and afterwards North-East; coasting the Breaking of the Sea to Windward, in three and two Fathom and an half, at low Water, to the *Interlopers* Ile, where he took Care to avoid a Bank, which runs-out thence a League. In their Course to *Bandi* Point, and from it to the Town, was ten Fathom deep all along.

THE same Night, Mr. *Grazilhier* returned to *Kalabar* in the Sloop, with a fresh Cargo, Mr. *Barbet* accompanying him. They arrived there, August the first, at Night: And the second, having gotten forty-two Slaves, *Grazilhier* returned, the same Night, to *Bandi*, leaving *Barbet* at *Kalabar* to trade, lodging the Goods in King *Robert's* House. The third, he arrived on board, and early next Day returned to *Kalabar*, in Company of a Portuguese Ship, where finding thirty Slaves ready, he next Day sailed with them to *Bandi*.

In this Manner they traded, back and forwards, from *Bandi* to *Kalabar*, till they had their Complement of Slaves. At some Trips, when the Winds were contrary or too high, they steered their Course through the Channel, between the long, narrow Isle that lies West of the Road, where are some Cottages of Fishermen, who often brought Fish on board. On the North Side of the Channel stands a Timber Building, which is to be seen as far-off as the Shore there. The before-mentioned Island is much higher than any Lands (about it.) The Building looks afar off like a Barn, and is surrounded with some Fishermens Houses, or Villages, at no great Distance. Mr. *Barbet* was once in this Barn, and observed there twenty-five or thirty Elephants Heads dried, set-up round the House on Boards, which are the Idols of the Country, the Natives resorting here as to a Place of Worship.

AFTER this, Mr. *Grazilhier* made some Trips to *Dani* in the Long-Boat; as did also Mr. *Barbet*. In their second Voyage, August the eighth, he came at Night to *Dani*, and lodged their Goods in the King's House, who was about forty-five Year old. On the ninth, he got three Slaves, three Cows, and one Goat, all for fifty-seven Bars, and returned on board; but, on account of the bad Weather, he did not reach *Bandi* till the tenth in the Morning, where he found Mr. *Barbet*, just arrived in the Sloop from *Kalabar* with thirty-seven Slaves.

MR. *GRAZILHIER*, who, after his Voyage to *Kalabar*, as Commander of English and Dutch Ships, told Mr. *John Barbet*, at *Southampton*, in 1705, that the Dutch then made nothing of fetching Slaves from *Kalabar*, with Ships of three or four hundred Tons Burden, that Nation having the greatest Trade there of any Europeans, both for Slaves and Teeth; and that, by the Knowledge he had acquired of *New Kalabar* River, he would engage to carry-in a Ship of six hundred Tons, without Danger, having found a Passage of between four and an half and five Fathom at low Water.

In October, 1700, he sailed from the Downs directly to this River in two Months Time, in a small English Ship, where he purchased two hundred Slaves, at twenty-four and twenty-six Bars a Man, and proportionably for a Woman; because of the great Number of Ships, sometimes ten, or more, together, that were then trading, which quite drained the upper Markets. He arrived at *Barbados* in April following.

In 1703 and 1704, the Price of Slaves at *Kalabar*, was twelve Bars a Man, and nine for a Woman.

THE Men Slaves gotten there are generally pretty tall, but weakly and faint, on account of their ill Food, which at best is Yams, or such sorry Provisions. A considerable Number is yearly exported hence by the Europeans, sometimes many Ships being here at a Time; which is the Reason the Price varies so much, that some Years it is double to what it is in others. He computes that there are also exported hence yearly thirty or forty Ton of Teeth, all fine and large, chiefly by the Dutch.

THE best Goods to purchase Slaves at *New Kalabar*, in 1704, were Iron and Copper Bars in great Quantity, especially the former; Ranges; Beads, Gooseberry-Colour, large and small; Indian Nikanees; small Brass Bells; three Pound Copper Basons, and some of two Pound; Guinea Stuffs; Ox-Horns for Drinking-Cups; Pew-

* *Barbet's* Description of *Guinea*, p. 461.

* He settled afterwards in *Holland*.

1699. ter Tankards, great and small; blue Linen; a
 Ozalhier. blue long Beads, or Pearls; Spirits; blue Per-
 pets, a few.

Mr. GRAZILHIER observed in July, Au-
 gust, and September, the Breaking of the Sea
 rose fifteen or twenty Foot high, all about the
 Mouth of new Kalabar River, and without it
 on the Banks of the Bar, which is a good Mark,
 or Caution, to all Ships that enter it: But in the
 following six Months of October, November, &c.
 when the Bar is covered with seven, eight, and
 nine Foot Water, there is more Caution re-
 quired. In August and September it is easier to
 get a Complement of Slaves, than the necessary
 Quantity of Yams and Provisions to subsist them:
 But in January, February, &c. when Yams are
 plenty and cheap, the first Thing to be done is
 to take them in, and then get the Slaves.

Provisions for
 the Slaves.

A SHIP that loads five hundred Slaves must
 provide above an hundred thousand Yams, which
 are difficult to stow, as they take-up a great deal
 of Room; yet it is necessary to have such a
 Quantity, the Slaves bought here being of such
 a Constitution that no other Food will keep them,
 Indian-Corn, Beans, and Mandioca * disagreeing
 with their Stomach: So that they sicken and die
 apace; as it happened on board the *Albion* Frigate,
 as soon as their Yams were spent, which was just
 when they anchored at St. Tome, after a Four-
 night's Passage from Bandi Point at Kalabar.

Their Con-
 dition.

BESIDES, these New Kalabar Slaves are a
 strange Sort of brutish Creatures, very weak and
 stolid; but cruel and bloody in their Temper,
 always quarrelling, biting, and fighting on board,
 and sometimes choking and murdering each o-
 ther without Mercy, as happened to several Gra-
 zilhier had on board. Whoever carries Slaves
 from this River to the *West-Indies*, had need pray
 for a quick Passage, that they may arrive alive
 and healthy. For this Purpose, it is advisable so
 to order Matters at Kalabar, as to be in a Con-
 dition to proceed directly to Cape Lopez, and not
 to St. Tome, or *Prinsep* Isle. All the Ships that
 loaded Slaves with the *Albion* Frigate at Kalabar,
 lost, some half, others two Thirds of them, be-
 fore they reached *Barbados*; and such as came
 alive there, either died as soon as landed, or
 turned to a bad Account: So that above sixty per
 Cent. of the Capital was lost, chiefly occasioned
 by the Want of proper Food and Water to sub-
 sist them, as well as the ill Management of the
 Principals on board.

Chart of the
 River.

WHILE they were taking-in their Comple-
 ment of Slaves at Great Bandi, their Mates,

assisted by Captain Edwards, the Portuguese
 Captain, whose Vessel lay by them, and the
 most experienced black Pilots, employed several
 Days to sound the Channel, and Depths of Wa-
 ter on the Bar and Banks that lie between *Fabo*
 and *Bandi*-Point. This was done with all ne-
 cessary Exactness, and a Map drawn of it, in-
 cluding New Kalabar and *Deni* Rivers.

Portage to
 Kalabar.

It is customary for the King of *Bandi* to treat
 the Officers of every trading Ship at their first
 Arrival; and these return the Compliment a few
 Days before they sail. Accordingly, August the
 twelfth, they treated the King and his chief
 Officers with a Goat, a Hog, and a Barrel of
 Punch. This Entertainment is a Kind of Ad-
 vertisement to their black Debtors on Shore to
 pay in what they owe, and to furnish the Slaves
 and Yams they have contracted for, or else the
 King compels them to it. At this Time also,
 such Natives as have received Presents from
 them, present them in Requital with a Boy or
 Girl Slave. According to this Custom, they
 treated the Blacks ashore on the fifteenth of Au-
 gust, inviting the Portuguese Master and the
 black Ladies. The King lent them his Music,
 to the Noise of which they had a long Diversion
 of Dances, not unpleasing to behold.

AUGUST the twenty-second, they let fly Signal of
 their Colours, and fired a Gun, as a Signal to
 the Blacks of their being ready to sail, that they
 might hasten on board with the rest of the Slaves
 and Yams contracted for.

THE twenty-sixth, came-in a Zealand Inter-
 looper, of sixteen Guns and forty Men, in two
 Days from *Prinsep* Isle. She set-out in March
 before, and had traded along the *Ivory* and *Gold*-
Coasts. From thence the Captain sailed to
 St. Tome, where he had deposited his Effects in
 Trust, and was now come to New Kalabar for
 Teeth, designing from hence to proceed to *Rio*
Gaben, *Kongo*, and *Angola* on the same Trade.
 Of this Ship they got an Anchor of eleven hun-
 dred Weight, in Exchange for their Sloop with
 her Masts, Sails, &c. A high Extortion; for
 the Sloop would have brought four hundred
 Pieces of Eight at St. Tome; but Necessity closed
 the Bargain, having but one Anchor left in so
 tall and rich a Ship.

AUGUST the twenty-eighth, at six in the
 Evening, they sailed from *Bandi* with the Tide
 of Ebb, keeping near the Shore to avoid the
 Banks that lie to the West of the Point, on
 which are some Rocks. At ten, they dropped
 Anchor within *Bandi* Point (which bore North-

Direction
 for Sailing.

* *Barbot's* Description of *Guinea*, p. 464.
 ing to the Chart, the Survey extended a great Way farther Westward, along the Coast.

b Or, *Mauick*.

c The same, p. 465.

d Accord-

East).

1699. East) in nine Fathom Water, about half a League a
 from Land, and two Miles English from the
 Breakers of the Sea, through which are several
 Passages, or Channels.

THE Channel, at South-West and North-
 East of the Point is found, there being from fif-
 teen to sixteen Foot at low Water; but being
 narrow, it cannot well be sailed through, except
 with a Land Wind, and at this Season such are
 rare. They therefore resolved next Day to try
 the South-East Channel, which is wide and safer
 in the South-West Winds.

A double
 Bar.

It must be observed, that there are two Bars,
 or Banks, to pass over. The first lies between
 two Shoals of a breaking Sea; where, when you
 have gotten *Bandi* Point at North-East, and *Fake*
 Point at West North-West, there is no Danger
 to range the Banks on the South-West (Side)
 very close, the better to be sure of this Channel,
 which is also the deepest; for there you have
 four, four and an half, and five Fathom. Coast-
 ing along the said Bank, and having gotten
 the same aboard, steering a while South South-
 East to weather the Breaking of the Sea at Lar-
 board, and then proceeding South-East by
 South, until you bring *Bandi* Point to bear full
 North, you will, in a short Time, have from
 three Fathom to three and three Quarters, for a
 Mile's Sailing; and when *Bandi* Point bears North,
 somewhat West, you are past all Dangers, and
 may boldly, for some Time, steer South-East,
 deepening your Water to four, five, six, and se-
 ven Fathom. By this Course it is easy to carry
 a Ship out of the River.

Directions
 for sailing.

To carry a Ship in, as coming from *Fake*
 Point, on five, or four Fathom and an half, at
 East and East by South, having brought *Bandi*
 Point to bear North, and *Fake* Point West
 North-West in four Fathom, in case you have an
 Ebb, you must anchor, if the Ship draws above
 ten Foot Water, and at the Beginning of the
 Flood sail again, steering North North-West:
 This carries you directly between the two
 Banks, ranging that which lies at West, the
 Bottom being there level, flat, hard Sand.

THEY were assured by the Natives, that they
 had never seen so tall a Ship (drawing fifteen
 Foot Water) get into their River; and *Barbot*
 thinks it a Miracle they escaped so well and so
 narrowly going-in.*

SECT. III.

The Coast, from Rio Formosa to Cape
 Formosa.

The Pirates of Ula. Rio Forcado: Trade there.
 Kingdom of Awerri, or Owerri: Climate:
 Trade: Soil and Produce: Inhabitants: Poly-
 gamy: The King turns Convert, for a white
 Wife: His Power.

AT the Mouth of the Rio Formosa, or Basin
 River, are the Ula Blacks, called from
 their Robberies, The Pirates of Ula. They are
 very poor, and live only by Plunder, sailing to
 all Parts of the River, and seizing all that comes
 in their Way, Men, Cattle, or Goods; which
 they sell for Victuals, whereof they are wholly
 unprovided.

EIGHTEEN Leagues South South-East of the Rio For-
 ca, is the Rio Forcado. This River
 has its Source far within Land, to the North
 North-East, with many Windings; and is, in
 most Places two English Miles over, especially
 towards the Sea-Coasts, but so shallow, it is na-
 vigable only for small Vessels that draw seven or
 eight Foot Water. The Banks are adorned with
 Rows of beautiful Trees, which make the Pros-
 pect very agreeable. Near the Mouth of it, on
 a small River which loses itself in the Forcado,
 lies the Village *Peloma*, inhabited only by
 Fishermen.

ARTUS says, this River is so broad, that it
 is easily known, and that there lies an Island* at
 the Entrance. He adds, that it is often visited
 by the Portuguese, who purchase a great Num-
 ber of Slaves here, which they transport to *St.*
Thomas and *Brazil*, to serve in their Plantations
 and Sugar-Works. This River affords nothing
 remarkable, but a Sort of blue, green, or black
 Stones, which the Negroes much esteem, and
 use as Beads. These Stones are also much valued
 on the Gold-Coast. The Negroes near *Rio For-*
cado go naked till they are made Slaves of, when
 they wear a Clout to cover themselves. The
 Portuguese trade there for Slaves, and have some
 of their Nation settled there.

* *Barbot's Description of Guinea*, p. 463.

* Perhaps, that in our Pilots, called *Dufman*, with a large Island, of the same Name, lying before it.

* *Barbot*, at before, p. 376.

* This Island is called *Forcado* in the English Pilot.

* *Artus*, in *de Bray's Ind. Orient.* vol. 2. Part. 6.

p. 119.

Awerri
Kingdom.
Kingdom of
Awerri.

THE Kingdom of *Awerri*, *Ouwerri*, or *Oviri*, lies along the *Rio Forcado*. The chief Town, which gives its Name to the Country, lies on the same River, about thirty-six Leagues from its Mouth. It is about two Miles in Compass, surrounded on the Land-Side with Groves and Thickets, and is the Residence of the King. The Houses are generally fine and neat, considering they are in a Country of Blacks, particularly those of the better Sort; the Walls being of Clay, or Loam, painted red or grey, and the Roofs of Palm-Tree Leaves. The King's Palace is not so large as that of *Ondo* in *Benin*, which it resembles in the Form, Materials, and Disposition.

Climate.

THE Air is very bad, by Reason of the malignant Vapours usually exhaled from the River; which spread over the Country, and occasion a great Mortality among the *Europeans*: Especially those who frequent the cross Rivers, that fall into the *Forcado*, and live intemperately, or are not careful to shelter themselves from the Evening Dews and Moon-shine.

Trade.

THE *Portuguese* and *Dutch* trade most at the *Forcado*. Their Cargoes are the same as are proper for the *Benin* Trade. They export hence in Exchange, lusty, strong Slaves, much better shaped than those from *Guinea*, but there are not above five hundred Slaves to be gotten in a Year. They get here also some Jasper Stones and *Alkery*, but little of the latter, except what is small and exceeding dear.

THE *Portuguese* were the first *Europeans* who traded here, and used to trust their Goods with the Natives, to carry up the Country and sell for them; but the *Dutch* have broken them of this Custom, and brought them all to trade for ready Money at the Factories, where even the Women come to buy and sell. They are civil and honest in their Dealings, but tedious in their Way of bargaining before they agree on a Price, which, once settled, becomes fixed for all the People.

Soil and
Products.

THE Country is not in general very fertile, the Night Dew being thin, which occasions a great Scarcity of Grass for their Cattle; so that they breed but few, and have not many Horses, as in *Benin*, and the Countries to the West and North.

POULTRY is very plentiful, and larger than in any Part of *Guinea*. They have a special Way of dressing them; for, when they roast a Puller, or Chicken, they haste it with its own Dripping, beaten-up with the Yolk of an Egg, which gives it a good Relish.

* Or, *Aguti*.

* Barbot's Description of Guinea, p. 376, & seq.

THEY have Store of Palm-Trees, Lemons, Oranges and *Guinea-Pepper*, or *Malagetta*, and a vast Number of *Bahama-Trees* and *Manihot-Bushes*, which they call *Mandi-baka* in their Language; of which they make the *Kashiba*, or *Farinhe de Paz*, that is, in *Portuguese*, *Wheat-Meal*, which is the Bread they commonly use.

BOTH Men and Women are generally well-shaped, the latter especially handsome. Both Sexes have three large Scars, or Cuts, in the Face; one on the Forehead, exactly above the Nose, the two others, one at each Side of the Eyes near the Temples. They wear their Hair long or short, according to Fancy.

THEY are more industrious than the *Benin-Negros*, and no Way inferior to them for Neatness. Their Cloths are much finer, about two Ells long, which they wind about their Stomach and Breast, the Ends hanging down. Some are made of Cotton; others of Bark, Flax, or Weeds, spun as fine as Silk, and wove into Stripes and Checkers, the Woof hanging-out at each Side like a Fringe. These Cloths yield good Profit on the *Gold-Coast*.

EVERY Man here, as in other Parts of *Guinea*, may have as many Wives as he pleases; but when he dies, all the Widows belong to the King, who disposes of them as is done in *Benin*.

THE Religion of the Country differs from that of *Benin*, only in the Point of sacrificing Men and Children to their Idols; which the People of *Ouwerri* are averse to, alledging, that to shed human Blood belongs to the Devil; nor are they fond of Idol-Worship, or addicted to poisoning, as those of *Guinea*. They seem still to retain something of Christianity, there being a Chapel in the Town of *Ouwerri*, in which is a Crucifix on an Altar, and round it the Figures of the Virgin and Apostles, with two Candlesticks by them. To this the Natives resort from all Parts, uttering some Words before the Crucifix, and carrying Beads in their Hands, such as the *Portuguese* use. It is said, several of these Blacks can read and write; the *Portuguese* from *St. Thomas* and *Principe* Isle, supplying them with Paper, Ink, and Books: Whence, the Author concludes their Conversion would be more easily effected, than that of any other Nation on the Coast.

ON this Occasion, *Merrill*, in his Voyage to the *King*, tells us the following whimsical Adventure. About the Year 1683, two *Capuchin* Missionaries, called Father *Angelo Maria d'Hyacin*, and Father *Bonaventura de Firenze*, arriving

Awerr
Kingdom.

here from *St. Thomas*, were well received by the King, who was better bred than ordinary: For he had been educated amongst the *Portuguese*, whose Language he was Master of; a Qualification rare for a Negro-Prince. At their first Interview, Father *Angelo* addressed the King thus: "If your Majesty desires I should continue in your Dominions, you must oblige your Subjects to embrace the holy State of Matrimony, according to our Rites: And whereas the young Men and Women go naked till Marriage, I desire your Majesty will command them all to be covered." The King replied, That as to his Subjects, he would take Care they should submit to his Request, but he would never comply with it himself, unless he was married to a white Woman, as some of his Predecessors had been.

For a white
Wife.

THE Difficulty was to get a *Portuguese* who would marry the King, for they all despise the Blacks. However, Father *Angelo* returned to *St. Thomas* to look-out a Wife for the King; and being informed of a poor, virtuous Girl, who lived under the Care of her Uncle, he one Day, after Mass, turned to the People, and publicly, in the Name of God, adjured the Uncle to consent, that his Niece might marry the King of *Ouverri*, in order to promote the Conversion of that Nation. The Uncle, prevailed on by such pious Motives, consented; and the zealous Father had the Pleasure of conducting the Lady to the King, attended by some of her own Nation. She was received with great Affection and Magnificence, and married to the King after the Christian Manner, which was followed by the Conversion of the People.

His Power.

THE King of *Ouverri* (who, as some say, is tributary to him of *Benin*) is very absolute. He who reigned in 1644, was a Mulatto, born of a *Portuguese* Woman, married to King *Mingo*, and the said Prince was called *Don Antonio Mingo*: He always wore a *Portuguese* Dress, and a Sword by his Side.

S E C T. IV.

The Coast, from the Rio Forcado to Rio Real, or New Kalabar River.

Coast of *Awerrri*, Cape Formosa. Rivers Eastward: The Non: The Oddi: Filana: St. Nicholas, or Lempea: St. Barbara, or Meaz: St. Bartolomeo, or Tres Irmaos: Sombreiro: Rio Real, or New Kalabar River. Foko Island and Town: Prevalent here: Season for

Trade. New Kalabar Town: Way of living Kalabar Coast. there: Image Worship: Character of the Natives. Belli Town. Krikke and Moko Territories. Bandi Point. Great Bandi Town. Doni River and Town. Idol Temple. Old Kalabar River: Island at the Mouth: Inconvenient for Trade.

THE Coast of *Awerrri*, or *Ouverri*, from the Mouth of the Mouth of *Rio Forcado* to Cape *Formosa*, extends, South-East by South, about forty-six Leagues; all the Way low, flat, woody Land, scarce to be seen till in twenty-five Fathom Water out at Sea.

It is divided by several Rivers, which run across it into the Ocean; the most considerable of which are the *Raona*, or *Lama*, and *Dada*: But none of them are much frequented by Europeans, *Rio Forcado* engrossing all the Trade. Nor is there much Advantage by frequenting these Rivers, all that the *Dutch* or *Portuguese* get, being a few Slaves in the River *Sangama* at Cape *Formosa*, and the Rivers betwixt it and the *Rio Real*, or *New Kalabar*; but it is not worth the while for a Vessel of Burden to stop here.

CAPE *Formosa* lies in four Degrees ten Minutes, North Latitude, and, like the adjacent Coast, is low, flat, and woody. The *Portuguese* gave it this Name from the fine Prospect it yields at Sea, being all covered with beautiful Trees. To the North North-West of it runs a small River, on whose North Side stands the Village of *Sangama*, a little within the Mouth, before which, at low Water, there lies a Shoal. At this Cape, most Seamen commence the *Bight of Guinea*, though some take it from *Rio das Lagos* near *Ardrab*. Modern Geographers call it the *Ethiopic Gulf*, and end it at Cape *Lape Ganfatus*, the Land between both Capes forming a large Semicircle. Cape *Formosa* may be seen from the West, when you come into twenty-four Fathom Water, but not before, the Coast running from South-East to North-West.

FROM Cape *Formosa* to *Rio Real*, or *New Kalabar River*, the Coast runs East for about thirty-five Leagues; but is cut-through, at Distances, by seven different Rivers. There is good Anchorage along it for all Sorts of Vessels, in five, six, and seven Fathom, sandy Ground; the Breakers being near the Shore, and the Coast, from one End to the other, low and flat. However, the true Course is to keep in ten Fathom Water, which is the best Anchorage all round the *Bight*, on account of the loose Sands that lie nearer the Shore.

* See *Churchill's* Collection, vol. 1. p. 676. Also, vol. 5. p. 377.

* The same, p. 378.

* *Barker's* Description of *Guinea*.

Kalabar, River. THE first of the seven Rivers which appear on a Point, North and South, at four and three and an half Fathom deep at slack Water. Being come within the Breakers, you must steer to the West, almost to *Foko* Point, and afterwards North, to the Road of *Foko* Town, between the Main and a little Island before it, about two English Miles Distance.

Rio Nuan, Rio Odu. THIS second River, farther East, is *Rio Odu*, called also *Pan Sadi**, *Mofonja**, and *Santa Benita*†. When you are to the South of it, in seven Fathom, it is remarkable for two tall Capes, or Head-Lands, one on each Side of its Mouth. The Land within these Capes is flat and low. There are also two Thickets of lofty Trees on each side the River, not far asunder. The Coast is low and level.

Rio Filana. THE third River is that of *Filana*‡, or *Juan Diaz*.

Rio Lempta. THE fourth is that of *St. Nicholas*, or *Lempta*§.

Rio Meas. THE fifth is the *Ris de St. Barbara*, or *Rio Meas*||: At the Mouth, and to the East of it the Sea runs high, with great Breakers.

Rio St. Bartolomeo. THE sixth is *St. Bartolomeo*, or *Ris dos tres Irmãos* [of the three Brothers] remarkable for a steep Head-Land on the Coast, two Leagues off it, and for the great Breakers at Sea to the East. A League and an half from the Shore there is but four fathom, uneven Ground; the Land runs low South South-East.

Rio Sombreira. THE seventh is *Ris Sombreira*¶, through which, small Vessels may pass into *New Kalabar* River by cross ones.

AT all these Rivers, which are seen from Sea, Ships may anchor, and try their Fortune for Slaves and Teeth; but the best is *Ris Sombreira*. From hence to *Foko* Point, being the West Head of *New Kalabar* River, is but three Leagues East, and from *Foko* Point to *Bandi* Point, four Leagues. This is the Breadth of the Mouth, or Entry, of *Ris Real*, or *New Kalabar* River, which is navigable, without much Trouble, for Ships of three hundred Tons, or more, if they be Fly-Boats.

Rio Real, or New Kalabar River. THIS River is called by the Portuguese, *Ris Real*; by the English, *Kalabar*§; and by the Dutch, *Kalbari*, from the Town of *New Kalbari*, or *Kalabar*, and its Territory seated on it. It is called by some, *Kalberine* River, and runs up the Land, to the North-West, a great Way, but is only navigable for Sloops, or Yachts, the Bottom being very uneven.

THE Road before this River (which is the eighth from Cape *Pormosa*) is hard, sandy Ground, from five to eight Fathom, without the Breakers, which lie athwart the Mouth, before the two small Islands, and the true Channel is at *Bandi*

Point, North and South, at four and three and an half Fathom deep at slack Water. Being come within the Breakers, you must steer to the West, almost to *Foko* Point, and afterwards North, to the Road of *Foko* Town, between the Main and a little Island before it, about two English Miles Distance.

THIS Island is pretty high, and serves for a *Foko* Island, Mark at Sea to know the River. Very few Ships go up so high as *New Kalabar* Town, it being safer to ride at *Foko*, which is not so molested with Mosketos.

A SMALL Ship may venture upon the Channel at *Foko* Point, with the Tide, keeping so near the Shore as to speak with the Blacks on Land: But at low Water, the deepest Channel is at *Bandi* Point.

THE TOWN of *Foko* lies some Leagues up the *Ris Real* on the West Side, or rather (as afterwards is observed) as you enter the River. It is, by the Dutch, called *Windsorp*, on account of the great Plenty of Palm-Wine the adjacent Country affords, *Foko*, in the Country Language, signifying *Wine*. This Town has two small Rivers, one to the West another to the East, both which fall into the great River, which runs up North-West, and has good Anchorage in the Mouth of the West Rivulet, up which Sloops may sail three Leagues. As there are several other Hamlets, or Villages, along the River on each Side, all inhabited by a civilized Sort of People, any Man may safely venture to trade for Slaves, Teeth, or Provisions.

THE Town of *Foko* supplies Wood and Water, the latter of which is taken from a Pond near the Place, and keeps well at Sea. It is much better than that gotten at *New Kalabar* Town.

HERE are also Yams and Bananas to be had reasonably cheap, but from *August* till *March* they are scarce and dear; so that some Ships have been forced to fall-down to *Ambosaz* and *Ris Kemorrenes*, in *May* and *June*, to buy Plantains, (which is a Sort of dried Bananas, somewhat green, and a Food much liked by the Natives) and afterwards turn-up West to *New Kalabar* to slave, losing a Month or five Weeks. To avoid such a Delay at that Season of the Year, it is better for a Ship, bound from hence to *America*, to stop at Cape *Tres Puntas*, or *Anamabo*, on the *Gold-Coast*, and buy *Indian-Wheat*, or Corn, there; the *Kalabar* Slaves being generally better pleased with their own Country Food, than with

* *Fonlanja*, in the Map or Chart of *Kalabar* River.

† *Mofonja*, in the Chart.

‡ In the Chart,

Rio Nuan is the *Santa Benita*.

§ In the Map, *Filana*, or *St. Juan*.

¶ The Map calls this *Juan*

Diaz.

§ The Chart calls it also *Sangana*.

|| *Bandi*† Description of *Guinea*, p. 579.

¶ In

the Map, written *Kelbar*.

† *Bandi*, as before, p. 360.

Kalabar
River.

any of Europe, except Horse-Beans, which many a like, well boiled with Pork or Oil, but especially the Gold-Coast Slaves¹.

Season for
Trade.

THE Yams, which are their chief Subsistence, are not fit to be dug-up before July and August; So that most Europeans reckon these two Months, June and May, the best Season for Kalabar River, because of the cool Rains which refresh the Air, and give the Natives an Opportunity to trade up the Country; especially August and September, in June and July the Lightning and Thunder being frequent and very terrible.

THE worst Season is in the Months of October, November, and December, because of the violent Heat and thick Fogs; so that it is not possible to see from one End of a Ship to the other. The Yams at Bandi Point are not so good as those at Fates, or New Kalabar, where the Soil is better.

New Kalabar
Town.

THE Town of New Kalabar lies on an Island close to the Main, on the North Side of a small Rivulet which enters Rio Real. It is the chief Place of the Dutch Trade, and contains three hundred and nine Houses, being palisaded after the Negro Fashion. This Rivulet forms at its Head a large Island, all over woody, but so close to the Main, that it is hardly discernible to be an Island, the River here being very narrow. On the North Side of the Town is a large Swamp, or marshy Ground, which the Tide often overflows², the Water running even between the Houses, which stand without any Order. That of the King is pretty high and airy. The Land round the Town being dry and barren, most of the Inhabitants fetch all their Subsistence from a Country to the North, inhabited by the Haklent Blacks; a People much addicted to War, and Depredations on their Neighbours, being strong, lusty Men. In their Territories, are two Market Days weekly for Slaves and Provisions, which the Kalabar Blacks keep very regularly, to supply themselves with both, especially Palm-Oil and Wine, which are plentiful there.

Way of living
there.

ROBERT, the then reigning King of Kalabar, was a good civil Man about thirty Years old. Every Night they club together at one another's Houses by Turns. The Provision is two or three Jugs of Palm-Wine, each of them containing twelve or fifteen Gallons. Every Person, Man or Woman, brings their own Stool. On these they sit round, and drink about in Ox Horns well palisbed, which hold a Quart or more, singing and roaring till the Liquor is out.

THEIR common Food is Yams, boiled with Fish and Palm-Oil, which they esteem dainty Food. They showed Mr. Barber a great Quantity of Elephants Teeth, very large, but so dear that they would have turned to no Account in Europe.

EVERY House, as well as the Streets of this Town, are full of Idols. They call them *Jou*, being in the Nature of tutelal Gods. Many of them are dried Heads of Beasts; others are made of Clay, or Earth, painted over.

BEFORE the King goes on board any Ship newly arrived, he repairs to his Idol-House, with Drums beating, &c. all his Attendants being bare-headed. There he cringes to these Puppets, begging a prosperous Voyage, and sacrifices a Hen; which is tied alive, by one Leg, to the End of a long Pole, and has a Brass Ring on the other Leg, leaving the poor Creature in that Condition till it starves to Death. He performs the same Devotions when their Fleet of Canoes goes up the River for Slaves, and when it returns.

THE Kalabar Blacks are generally cruel, thievish, and treacherous in their Engagements, though never so solemn. Mr. Barber saw no Curiosities there, but some Shells, and the Weapons used by the Haklent Blacks.

THERE are a vast Number of Apes and Monkeys about Kalabar, but not handsome. Of these the Natives give three or four for an old Hat, or Coat. They have also blue Parrots³.

TEN Leagues up the Country, West of New Kalabar Town, lies that of Belli. It is large, and governed by a Captain; but has little Trade, except a few Slaves⁴.

ABOUT sixteen Leagues above New Kalabar, the River receives another smaller one, which comes from the inland Country at East North-East, on the Banks of which are several Villages.

THE Territory of Krikke lies some Leagues North North-West of Rio Real⁵, and borders South on that of Moko, which lies on the Sea, as well as Bani⁶; another Territory, with a large Village called Kuleba, and eight or ten smaller in the Compa of four Leagues; all governed by a Captain, as are the others mentioned, though the Europeans commonly give these Chiefs the Title of Kings. The Money of Moko is of Iron, in the Shape of a Thornback, flat and broad as the Palm of the Hand, having a Tail of the same Metal as long as the Hand.

¹ Barber's Description of Guinea, p. 379.

² The same, p. 380.

³ The same, p. 451, & seq.

⁴ In the next Page, he says it lies West of Old Kalabar.

⁵ Dr. L'Isle, in his Map of Barbary, Nigritia, and Guiney, places Krikke on the East of Kalabar River, Moko and Bani opposite, on the West Side.

⁶ This probably is Bidi, or Dosi, (hereafter mentioned) called Bani in our Pilots; as Kuleba seems to be Kuleba at the Mouth of Old Kalabar River.

Kalabar
River.
Bandi River.

BANDI Point, the Eastern Head or Cape of a the Mouth of *Rio Real*, or *New Kalabar* River, is discernible at sea by a Tuft of high Trees, which over-top the Woods that cover all the Coast. This Tuft the Portuguese call the *Lam-theren*, which must be carefully observed steering into the River, as well as the Islands that lie at its Entry. The true Channel is near this Point North and South, in four and three Fathom and an half, slack Water. It is usual, when the Blacks see a Sail in the *Offing*, to send a Canoa with Pilots on-board, who speak a little either *English*, *Dutch*, or *Portuguese*, and direct you safe into *Bandi* River. When you open this, or view it on the Larboard-Side, you must steer North-East with the Tide, which runs very swift, and to come to Anchor before the Town of *Bandi*, or *Great Bandi*.*

Great Bandi
Town.

GREATER BANDI lies two Leagues East within the Point. The Road has from twelve to fourteen Fathom Water. The Town consists of three hundred Houses, divided into Parcels; and stands in a marshy Island near the Main, like that of *New Kalabar*, but somewhat larger. The Buildings and Manners of the Inhabitants are alike, well peopled with Blacks, who employ themselves in Trade and Fishing, like those of *New Kalabar*. They use large Canoes, some sixty Foot long, and seven broad, rowed by sixteen, eighteen, or twenty Men, carrying *European* Goods and Fish to the inland Countries, and bringing-down in Exchange a great Number of Slaves of all Sexes and Ages, and Teeth to supply the *European* Ships. Several of these Blacks act as Factors for the *Europeans*, or their own Countrymen, who intrust them with their Goods to sell at the inland Markets, and purchase Slaves for them: The Slaves gotten here being not Prisoners of War, but bought by those People of their inland Neighbours, who buy them of other Nations more remote.

THE *Dutch* have the greatest Share of Trade here, the *English* next; and last, the *Portuguese* from *Brazil* and *St. Thomas*. All these Nations export hence a great Number of Slaves to *America*, besides a large Quantity of good Elephants Teeth and Provisions.

Dani River
and Town.

TWENTY-FIVE Miles East of *Bandi* Point is the *Rio Lajimba*, or *Santo Domingo*, called also *Beni*, *Dani*, and *Andoni*. About four Miles up it, at the Bottom of a Creek on the East Side, stands the Town of *Dani*, or *Bodi*†. *Barbot* says, it is large and populous, and carries-on a Trade for Slaves and Teeth with the *Europeans* by Means of *Bandi* River, which communicates with it.

WHEN Mr. *James Barbot* was there in July, 1699, the Country round it was all overflowed, being a low, swampy Ground, cut in many Places with small Rivers running into the great one of *Dani*.

THEY have Plenty of black Cattle, Hogs, and Goats, but small, especially their Cows; with Abundance of Palm-Wine, which is their usual Drink.

NEAR the King's House, where *Barbot* lay, *Idol Temple* was another, where he kept his Idols, or *Jeu Jeu*, in a large Press full of the Skulls of his Enemies, killed in War, or else of Beasts; besides a Quantity of human Bones and other Trifles, moulded with Clay, and painted as at *Kalabar*. They are so superstitious, that whoever should offer to touch one of them, would run the Hazard of his Life. Besides these they worship Bulls, and a large Sort of Lizard, called *Guanai* in the *French* Islands of *America*, and it is no less than Death to kill any of either Kind.

MOST of these Blacks are circumcised, and pay great Honour to their Priest. Whenever they kill any Beasts for their own eating, they reserve the Entrails for their Idols, which they lay on little Altars erected in many Places to their Honour.

THE King of *Dani* was a good-natured, civil Man, and spoke *Portuguese*, but seemed to have received some Tincture of Popery from the *Romanish* Priests who are sent over here from *Livonia* and *St. Tome*. The first Time he came on-board, which was July the seventh, they presented him a Hat and Gun, and he invited them to trade at his Town.

FROM *Ris de St. Domingo*, or *Dani*, to that of *Old Kalabar*, or *Kalbarine*, the Coast stretches East, all over level and woody, the *Ris de Conde* lying between. The *Dutch* call it *Oute Kalbargh*, and the *English*, *Old Kalbari*. The true Channel is on the East Side in three Fathom and an half Water; and the best Anchorage in it is near another River, called *Groji* River, coming into it from the North-West above the Place called *Sandy Point*; below which, at the Mouth of *Old Kalabar* River, are two Villages at a Distance from each other, called *Fish Town* and *Salt Town*, from the different Occupations of the Natives.

ON the East Side of *Old Kalabar* River, just *ward at the Mouth*, is another small River, which runs-up North and then East to *Ris del Rey*, forming an Island between them. Through this River Ships may pass safely. In the Middle of the Entry of *Old Kalabar* River lies a small, low, oval Island, called *Parrats Isle*‡, which makes two Channels; the best is on the Side of

* *Barbot's Description of Guinea*, p. 380.

of *Kalabar* River, in the Mouth.

† *Barbot*, as before, p. 452.

‡ The same, p. 381, and 451.

§ The *English* Pilon place it a good Way with-

Barbot's

Rio del Rey. *Benet's River* (to the East,) the other runs between that small Isle and the *Salt Treen* on the Main; but it has a Bar athwart it, extending from *Salt Treen* to very near the West Point of *Parrots Isle*, leaving only a narrow Passage close to that Isle six or seven Fathom deep.

By these Marks the River of *Old Kalabar* is easily known from Sea, and is navigable for large Ships. The Country about it is full of Villages, and affords Plenty of Provisions at the proper Season, as Yams, Bananas, Corn, &c. The People are civilized and fond of Trade, but it is not brisk here, some Ships being obliged to stay eight or ten Months for their Cargos, fastening their Ships to large Trees on the River-side to save their Cables.

Investigator for Trade. THE Air of this River is very malignant to Strangers. *Barbet*, in his first Voyage to *Guinea*

in the *African-Sun*, met, in crossing the Line, *Rio del Rey*, as *English Fly-Boat* bound for *Newin*, which having been ten Months at *Old Kalabar*, only five Men of the Crew were able to handle the Sails; and of three hundred Slaves purchased there, a third Part or more were then dead, though they had been but three Weeks from the River.

THE *Dutch*, who agree worst with this Place of all the *Eurapians*, seldom trade here: Besides, it is so situated in the Gulph, that the Tide continually runs with great Violence to *Rio Komarones* in the circular Part of the *Bight*, North from all the Coast round it, which makes it a great Fatigue to Ships from *Old Kalabar* to turn-up for three Weeks or a Month to gain *Prince's Isle*, *St. Thomas*, or *Cape Lope Gonsalves*, to take in Refreshments.

C H A P. III.

The Coast from Old Kalabar River to Cape Lope Gonsalvo.

S E C T. I.

From Kalabar River to Rio Gabon.

Rio del Rey: Trade here. Country of the Ambozes: Their Villages. Little Komarones River. Ambozes Isles: Populous and fruitful. The Kalongos. Rio Komarones, the Greater. Komarones Nation. Rio de Boroa: The Inhabitants. Rio de Campo. Rio de St. Benito. Bay of Angra. River Angra. Great Corico Isle: Name, whence: The Inhabitants. Isles of Moucheron: Trade there. Coast to Rio Gabon.

c to them. Near these there is eight Fathom Water.

THE Shore on both Sides the River is low and marshy. The River, which comes far from the North, is wide for a considerable Way up the Country; and receives several others in its Course, the adjacent Lands being populous, and full of Villages.

THE Trading-Place on the West Point of the *Trade here*, River, is a Village seated on a small River that flows into *Rio del Rey* just at the Mouth, and is navigable for Sloops. The *Dutch* have the greatest Share of Trade here in Yachts they send from *el Mina* with proper Assortments for this Place; such as Iron Bars, Coral, Brass Bassons, and other refuse Goods of the Coast; Bloom-colour Beads or Bugles, and Purple; Copper Bracelets or Rings made at *Luanda* in *Angola*, with Prefiles for Lemons and Oranges. In Exchange for these they annually export four or five hundred Slaves, ten or twelve hundred Ton of fine, large Teeth, two or three weighing commonly an hundred Weight; besides *Athori*, (or blue Coral) Javelins, and a Sort of Knives the Negroes here make to Perfection, which sell well on the *Gold-Coast*. The *Athori* is to be found no-where but between *Rio del Rey*, and *Rio de Komarones*.

THE Natives have no fresh Water but that of Rain, which they gather from the Tops of their Houses. The Air is thick and foggy.

Rio del Rey. FROM the East Point of *Old Kalabar* to the West Cape of *Rio del Rey* the Coast extends East about ten Leagues.

THE *Rio del Rey* is easily known coming from the West, by the extreme high Lands of *Ambozes* which lie between it and *Rio Komarones*, and appear to the South-East as you enter the Mouth. This looks like a deep, large Bay, running North, seven or eight Leagues wide at the Entrance, where there is three Fathom oozy Ground; the Channel being exactly in the Middle, free from Shoals and Sands, except near the East Shore, which is foul. Somewhat out to Sea are two Rows of Poles fixed in the Water, called a *Fishery*, the Blacks probably fastening their Nets

* *Barbet's Description of Guinea*, p. 381, & seq.

The Am-
broses
Country.

THE Territory of *Ambroses*, which lies between *Rio del Rey*, and *Rio Kamarones*, is remarkable for the Height of its Mountains near the Shore, thence called, by the Portuguese, *Tierra Alta de Ambrosi*. Some of these are esteemed as high as the Pike of *Teneriffe*. From *Rio del Rey* the Coast slopes South-East. Five Leagues beyond lies the *Rio Piquen*, or, *Little River of Kamarones*: From whence to Cape *Kamarones*, the North Point of the great River, the Coast is much more low and woody than it is between the *Little Kamarones*, and *Rio del Rey*.

THIS Territory is cut through by Branches of Rivers coming from *Grat* and *Little Kamarones*, which divide it into several large Islands. The farthest of these in *Kamarones* is called *Negrey*, in which is *White Bay*; and the next to it at *West Negrey*, near to which, on the West Side, is the Head or Cape, by the English called the *High Point*, opposite to *Rio de Borsu*, at the South-East Side of *Kamarones*. Here there is a Village of Fishermen some Leagues distant from *Sualila Point*, which lies on the same Continent to the South-West.

Two Pil-
lages.

THE Land of *Ambroses* comprehends several Villages to the West of Cape *Kamarones*, amongst which are those of *Serges*, *Badi*, and *Beliwo*; where there is a little Trade for Slaves, and for *Alkari*, chiefly in the Hands of the Dutch. The Country is fertile in all Sorts of Guinea Plants and Fruits, except Palm-Trees. To supply the Defect of Palm-Wine, they use for Drink a Liqueur made of a certain Root, called *Gafanias*, boiled in Water, which is not disagreeable, and is good for the Colic. They have Abundance of Poultry, &c.

THE Blacks here have the same Names for Numbers with the *Kamarones*. One, *mo*; two, *ba*; three, *melilla*; four, *mely*; and five, *matan*.

Little Ka-
marones
River.

THE River of *Little Kamarones* is properly a Branch of the *Greater*, which, subdividing itself into three Arms, runs through the Lands of the *Ambroses* into the *Ethiopic Sea*. The chief of these, being the third River to the South-East of *Rio del Rey*, is called, by the English, *Old Kamarones*. This third Branch again is subdivided into two others, running South-East and South-South-East into *Great Kamarones* River, and thus with the Ocean form three Islands in the Territory of *Ambroses*. In these are the highest Mountains, which extend to the North Point or Head of *Great Kamarones* River.

WEST and South-West of *Old Kamarones* River are three round Islands, two or three Leagues from the Main; which being as lofty and high Land as the opposite *Ambroses* Hills, seem at Sea to join the Continent. These are, by the Portuguese, called *Illas Ambrosi*. The Channel between these and the Main is eleven Fathom deep; and through it the largest first-Rate may safely sail, the Tide running as the Wind sits. The Northernmost of these three Isles lies four Leagues from the *Pesaria*, or Fishery of *Rio del Rey*, and the Southernmost five Leagues to the North of Cape *Kamarones*. This is the largest and highest Land. The middle one is smallest.

THOUGH these Isles appear at a Distance like *Populæ* and huge Rocks, yet they are very populous, and so fertile, especially in Palm-Wine and Oil, that they produce sufficient for the Support of the Inhabitants. The Plenty of Palm-Trees is the more surprising, as there are none on the opposite Continent. The Sea also round these Islands yields Abundance of Fish.

THE Road for Trade is to the East of the Southernmost Island. The Natives understand Portuguese pretty well, but are the worst Blacks of all Guinea. The three Isles form a Sort of Commonwealth, and the People live by their Incursions on the Continent.

THE *Rio del Rey* is inhabited by the *Kallenge*, *The Kallenge*. They are divided into two Nations, one dwelling along the upper Part of the River towards the Country of *Gabon* to the North, the other towards the Mouth, both at Enmity together. *Barbot* says, their Country extends from hence to Cape *Formosa*, West. They are a strong, robust People, but poor, treacherous, and envious in Traffic; very cruel and brutish, the Father selling his Children; the Husband his Wife; the Brother his Sisters, and the like. They are natty both in their Houses and Persons. They go quite naked, smearing their Bodies with a Sort of red Colour. They have several Scars on their Foreheads made with a red-hot Iron, or Pincers; plaiting their Hair in various Manners, and filing their Teeth as sharp as Needles, like the *Quaque*-Blacks. Their chief Employment is fishing in the Rivers, which abound with Fish.

THEIR Way of clearing themselves from old Crimes laid to their Charge, is to make an Incision in their Arm, and suck-out their Blood. The like is practised by the People of *Ambroses*, *Ambo*, and *Basteri*, who bear them a mortal Hatred on account of their wicked Dispositions.

* *Park's* Description of Guinea, p. 384. & seq.

* In the Pilots, *Steep Point*.

* This Ac-

count seems to be taken from the Pilots.

* *Barbot*, as before, p. 386.

* Our Pilots raise but

two.

* The English call them, *Ambroses*; the French, *Ambroses*.

* *Barbot*, as before,

p. 385.

Rio Kamarones.
Rios Kama-
rones.

RIO KAMARONES, by some called *Yamaron*^a, bounds Guinea on the South, and the Kingdom of *Biafara* to the North. This River falls into the Sea through a wide, spacious Mouth, yet it is only navigable for Brigantines or Sloops, and that not without Difficulty.

On the South Side of the Entry lies the *Little Buffers* Isle^b, from whence stretches South South-West a Ledge of Rocks, so steep, that Ships may sail close by them in six Fathom Water, as well as by the other Rocks which appear in the Mouth of the River on both Sides of the Channel, that lies exactly in the Middle, and has three Fathom Water. For some Leagues up, the Tides of Ebb and Flood go in and out constantly, and with great Swiftneſs.

THE best Anchorage is before the Mouth of a small River, which comes from the East, called, by the Blacks, *Manſha*, and, by the Dutch, *Tander-gatt*^c. Higher-up, on the same Side, it receives another small River, called, by the Dutch, *Menambafcha-gatt*; on the Banks of which is a Town (of the same Name) where the Europeans trade.

On the North Side of *Rio Kamarones*, for a good Way up, lie the high Lands of *Ambozes*, being a long Ridge of Mountains extending far inland at North North-East.

ABOVE *Menambafcha-gatt*^d, before-mentioned, is a Village called *Batelo*; and farther to the North-East, on the *Rio Kamarones* itself, a great Town called *Biafara*^e, the Capital of all these Countries. The Town of *Medra* is near the *Niger*, and is the Metropolis of the Kingdoms of *Medra* and *Tebeldera*.

THE Lands opposite to the latter Places, on the North of *Rio Kamarones*, are inhabited by the *Kallonges*, who are continually at War with the *Kamarones*-Negroes. These latter live higher on that River, and are governed by a Chief of their own, called *Mandoo*; whose Seat or Palace^f, built on a rising Ground, is by its Situation the most agreeable Residence in all *Guinea*, either for Prospect, Air, or the Fertility of the adjacent Soil, which yields Plenty of *Porten*-Wine, Yams, Bananas, Palms, and other Fruits.

THE Houses here are squares. The People drive some Trade with the Europeans, having Plenty of Teeth, *Akari*, and Slaves, at reasonable Rates. The proper Goods for this Place, are Iron and Copper Bars, Brass Pots and Kettles, f

hammered; Bugles or Beads, Rose-coloured, Purple, Orange, or pale Yellow; Ox-Horns and Steel Files. *Akari* is usually purchased with *Hamlen* Cloth, or *European* Goods, such as sell at *Rio del Rey* and other Places in the Gulph.

THE *Kamarones*-Blacks are lumpy, tall, and well shaped, with a smooth Skin, but generally long legged^g.

FROM *Swalaba* Point, which is the South Side of *Kamarones* River, the Coast as far as *Rio Gabien*, being seventy Leagues, is little known or frequented by Europeans.

FROM the Mouth of *Rio Kamarones* it runs South-East to *Rio de Beraa*, or *Berro*, about ten Leagues; not far from which is the Isle of *Branca*, or *Boracombo*, about two Leagues and an half from the Main, between it and the Isle of *Fernando* *Pes*, which is ten Leagues to the West of it. This Isle of *Branca* has several Sorts of Fruits and Birds, amongst which is the peculiar Species described at *Rio Sestre*^h. The Women here are reckoned the most shameless in all *Guinea*, openly prostituting themselves in the Sight of all Men.

SOME Years ago, a Dutch Ship happening to anchor here, a sloop came aboard with twenty-eight Blacks. One of them had a Drum and a hollow Stick like a Flute; another, whose Face, Arms and Breast were white, held in one Hand a green Branch and a Bell, in the other a little Bird like a Sparrow, which he now and then let fly upon the Deck; and whilst discoursing with them by Signs, often rang the Bell to express his Surprise at what he understood. Some Dutch going ashore to their Village, observed a small Hut three Foot high, wherein was an Earthen Pitcher covered with a Net, which the poor People would never suffer them to take-off. By the Pitcher was the Figure of a Child cut in Wood very oddly, with Fish-bones thrust into and round one Eye. They supposed this to be their Idol, and observed that they practised Circumcision; but did not discover that they had any Notion of a Deity, or performed any Kind of religious Worship.

FROM *Rio de Beraa* to *Rio de Campo* is fifteen Leagues, in which Space the *Portuguese* Maps, made by Order of the King of Portugal, (which the Author had by him) exhibit four Ports or Villages not to be found in those of any other Nation. These lie South of *Rio de Beraa*, and are,

^a Perhaps, *Yamari*.

^b Called, in our Pilots, the *Ruffs*.

^c In the Pilots, called the River *Bere*.

a few Leagues within the Mouth of the *Kamarones*.

^d In *Moll's* Map, *Manabua*.

^e This seems

to be taken from the Charts or Maps. *Biafara*, in the Pilots, is placed about twenty Leagues from the Mouth of the River; but in *de l'Isle's* Map eight Degrees.

^f This must be *Mandoo* before-mentioned; or,

^g *Barbot's* Description of *Guinea*, p. 326.

Manba, as *de l'Isle* calls it, some Leagues up the River.

^h The *Kabales* Birds.

Anguilla, Serra Guerreira, Angra de Ilbes, Pau de Nas, and *Porto de Garapa*. This last is represented in these Charts as a deep Bay, and seems to be the *Bight of Pan Nacia* in our Pilots, which makes good Anchorage between the Cape and a small Island of the same Name, on the North-West and South-West of which is fifteen Fathom Water. They likewise exhibit two round Hills at a little Distance from the Coast, extending inland from *Point Pan* to the North Bank of *Rio Campo*, but the *Dutch* Charts have nothing of these Places.

Rio de St. Benito. FROM *Rio de Campo* to *Rio de St. Benito* is ten Leagues South by West, in which Space the same *Portuguese* Charts set down several Rocks along the Shore, called *Baixas de Pedra*. South of these is a Port called *Duas Pontas*; in the *English* Pilot, the *Bay of Bata*, a deep Bay, pretty wide, with good Anchorage. It likewise marks a long Ridge of little Hills inland, extending from *Rio de Campo* five or six Leagues Southward; and places a high Promontory at the North Part of the Mouth of *Rio St. Benito*. Before this River there is a Bank or Shole extending three Leagues along the Channel, which has from four to six Fathom Water, and receives another River, called *Gaza*, from the East North-East.

Bay of Angra. FROM *Rio de St. Benito* to the Bay of *Angra* is fifteen Leagues, the Course directly South-West; the Coast sweeping inward semicircularly, and having from twelve to fifteen Fathom Water. The two Capes or Points of the Bay of *Angra*, according to the *Portuguese* Charts, are that of *das Serras* to the North, and of *St. Joao* to the South. According to the Pilot, the inner Part of the Sweep is low Land, rising gradually to the great Promontory of *St. Joao*; and beyond that low Land is a Ridge of Hills, called *Las Mitas*. The Coast also is covered with high Trees at Distances, and has eight Fathom Water round the Cape turning into the Bay.

Bay of Angra. THE Bay is eight or nine Leagues square, called, by the *English*, *Anger and Danger*. The *Rio de Angra* River falls into it at the South-East Angle, and a small River at the North-East Angle. In the Middle of this Bay lies a small Isle, called *Little Corisco*; and in the Midst of the Entrance another, named *Great Corisco*, four Leagues distant from the Capes on either Side. The *English* Charts agree with the *Portuguese* in the Disposition of this Bay, but differ much from the *Dutch*.

ACCORDING to *Barbist*, the North Point of *Great Corisco* has a Rock of a round Shape, forming two little Heads, one at each End, and a Cavity between each Head, on which are three or four Trees: A sure Mark to know it by, being exactly West of the Isle. It is about three Leagues in Length to the South, and about a League broad; encompassed from North-East to South-West with Shoals, Rocks, and Sands: But is much cleaner on the East-Side, where the Shore is a white Sand, and there is good Anchorage for Ships. Its North Point lies in forty-five Minutes North Latitude. The Land is rather low than otherwise, only the Coast rises a little to the North.

THE *Portuguese* called it *Ilha de Corisco*, from the violent and horrid Lightnings and Thunder, the first Discoverers met with here. It is all covered with Wood, most of the Trees being tall, and amongst them several that yield a Red Wood, fit for Dyers, which the Natives call *Tahai*, and the *English*, *Camwood*. It is a hard, ponderous Wood, and is a better Red than *Brass-letts*, or *Brasil* Wood. The Land both of *Great* and *Little Corisco* is so low, that the Trees seem to rise from the Water. The Sea round it is commonly calm, which makes it a good Port for careening Ships in three or four Fathom good Ground, and very near the Shore. The Road is on the North-East Side of the Isle near a Spring of fresh Water, which falls from the Hills into the Sea, facing the Bay of *Angra*. This Water at Ebb is very sweet, but brackish on the Return of the Flood, the Tide entering the Rivulet.

It is inhabited only by thirty or forty Blacks, who dwell near the North-East Point about a League from the Wooding and Watering-Place. They have much ado to keep their Health here, the Place being very unwholesome and intemperate. They are governed by a Chief, who is Lord of the Isle, and live but poorly; having only Plenty of Cucumbers, which grow here in Perfection, but many Sorts of Fowl.

IN 1679, the *Dutch* General at *la Mina* sent here forty *Dutchmen* to settle a Colony, and make the Soil arable, that it might be a Place of Refreshment for the *West India* Company's Ships homeward bound, instead of supplying themselves at the *Portuguese* Islands. These Men did accordingly erect a Tuff Fort, mounted with some Iron Guns to defend them from any Surprise of the Blacks; and made some Improvements in cul-

* *Barbist's* Description of *Guinea*, p. 387.

Contrariwise, in the *English* Pilot, *St. John* is to the North, and Cape *Silvaz*, the same with *das Serras*, to the South.

* Both Corruptions, the first of *Angra*, the second of *de Angra*.

Which, *Artus* says, was the Reason it was uninhabited, but referred to for Wood and Water.

Artus adds, that it is so filled and shining.

De Ry's Ind. Orient. vol. 2. Part. 6. p. 123.

Artus says, the Soil could produce nothing else.

Barbist, as before, p. 388.

Moucheron

Isle

tying the Soil: But the bad Air, and their Fatigue in grubbing and tilling the Ground, brought them soon into a sickly Condition; so that having lost seventeen Men, the Remainder razed their Fort, and returned to *Mina*, and the Dutch have since made no Attempt to retake it.

In the Time of *Artus*, the Dutch had a good Trade for Ivory at *Rio de Angra*, it being plenty here. The Language differs from that of *Gabon*, but in their Superstition and Customs they nearly agree.

Isle of Moucheron

A good Way up from *Great Corisco*, East North-East, in the Bay, are three small Isles, called by the Dutch, the *Isles of Moucheron*, from *Barthazar de Moucheron*; who, in his Voyage to the *East Indies*, *Ann* 1600, was by the Tides driven into the Gulf of *Guinea*, where he left his Ship at these little Isles. *Moucheron* caused a Fort to be built on the largest Isle, in Hopes of settling a profitable Trade with the Blacks of the Continent, and left the Care of the Settlement to one *Hofius*. This Person had not been in that Post four Months, when the Blacks of *Rio Gabon*, fearing the Dutch would draw all the Trade from their River, found Means to surprize the Fort, and massacred the Dutch with all the *Angra-Blacks* who happened to be then trading there; the Natives of *Rio de Angra*, who have a King, and are a better People, but less powerful, not daring to oppose them: But this Action stuck so in their Stomachs, that at last it occasioned a War between them and the People of *Gabon* and *Pongo*, which still continues.

Isle of

RIO DE ANGRA, or *Angra*, is a Place of Trade much frequented by the Dutch, and sometimes by the English Traders, who get here Elephants Teeth, Bees Wax, and some Slaves. They anchor in *Great Corisco* Road on the North-East Side; and send their Sloops or Boats, well manned and armed, up the River, carrying their Goods in Chests. The *Angra-Blacks* say, their River comes from a great Way inland; which is probable, by the Largeness of the Mouth. It lies exactly in two Degrees North Latitude.

Coast of Rio

Gabon.

FROM *Cape des Serris*, or *Esiras*, the Coast runs about five Leagues South-West to the Bay or *Rights of Esiras*, which is near three Leagues wide from North to South, and near as long.

FROM *Corisco* Isle to *Cape St. Clara* is reckoned about ten Leagues South by East, a direct Course in fifteen Fathom Water all along to near the said Cape, where it decreases to twelve. The

a Coast between them, by the English Map, is cut with one River, but nameless.

CAPE St. Clara forms a high Head, and shows a double Land very high as you come from the North. This is the North Point of *Rio Gabon*, so well known to Navigators.

S E C T. II.

Of the Rio de Gabon, and its Inhabitants.

Rio de Gabon. Cape St. Clara: The best Channel. Pongo Isles: Their Condition: Soundings: Strong Ebb: Reported to by Shipping. The Trade troublesome. The Inhabitants: Their Character: Mens Drift: Womens Drift. Their Weapons and Diet: Great Brandy Drinkers. Their Employments and Houses. King's Palace and Drift. Their Language and Religion. Government. The King a Blacksmith. The Seasons and Weather. Wild Beasts: Elephants and Buffaloes: Danger of hunting them. Roots and Fruits. Fish plenty. Way of fishing here.

FROM *Cape St. Clara* the Land turns off short to full East for six Leagues into the Bay of *Rio Gabon*, or *Gabaon*, as the Portuguese call it, being a high Shore, planted at Distances with lofty Trees. After this it winds towards the South South-East, being cut-in by two little Rivers. *Artus* says, the *Rio de Gabon* lies fifteen Leagues to the South of *Rio de Angra*, and is situated under the Equinoctial Line, the Isle of *St. Thomas* lying forty-five Leagues directly West of it. The Entrance of the River is four Leagues broad, but by Degrees lessens; so that at the Isle of *Pongo* it is not above two Leagues. The Banks are beautifully adorned with high Trees. According to *Barbot*, the Breadth of the Bay from *Cape St. Clara*, the North Point, to the South Cape, called by the English, the *Round Hill*, is three Leagues. The Middle of the Channel lies directly under the Line. The Depth between the Capes is from eight to six Fathom Water.

CAPE St. Clara shows off at Sea much like *Cape St. John* at *Rio de Angra*; but the Hill that forms it, is a particular Spot, like a white Mark, which, at a Distance, resembles the Sail of a Ship. It has also some Shoals running out to Sea, on which the Waves break violently. The South Point of the Entry is low Land, with a little round Hill on it, and all over woody. It

* *Barbot's Description of Guinea*, p. 389.

* *Artus*, in *de Br's Ind. Orient.* vol. 2. Part. 6. p. 123.

* *Artus*, as before, p. 123. Dutch *Geschied. Voy. to E. Ind.* Tom. 1. Part. 2. p. 550. Also *Barbot*, as before.

* *Barbot*, as before, p. 389, & *sepp.*

* Others name it *Gabaon*, *Gabon*, and *Gabum*.

* *Artus*, as before, p. 124.

* *Round Corner*, in the Pilots.

* *Artus* says, this Shole or Bar is three or four Pa-

thom over.

Pongo *Ile*, has also a Shoal lying off it; between which and the Land is Passage for a Schoop of thirty Tons without Danger. Some Leagues South of this Point appear the white Downs, called *las Serenissimas*, which are a good Mark in coming from the North to prevent over-shooting the River.

Best Channel. The best Channel for sailing-up, is along the South Shore, taking Head of a Rock which appears above Water near the second Point within the River. When past that Rock, you steer South a little Way, which puts you in the proper Channel to the Isles of *Pongo*, beyond which a Vessel may sail-up five or six Leagues*.

Pongo *Islands*. THREE or four Leagues within the River you come to two Islands, called the *Islands of Pongo*. These lie beyond the Point, called by the *Dutch*, *Sandbeck*, or *Sand Point*; and by others, *Zuid Hark*, or *South Point*, a Place where *European* Ships commonly take-in fresh Water, which is better here than at *Cape Lopez* *Gambou*. *Barbot* says, this Point is about five Leagues within the River's Mouth, and extends from North to South*.

THE *Pongo* Isles lie near the North Shore, and are distinguished from each other by different Names. One of them, about two Leagues in Compass, has a high Hill in the Center†, and is, by the *English*, called *Prince's Isle*; by the *Dutch*, *Koning Eyland*, *for*, the *King's Isle*‡) it being the King's Residence, and is very populous. The other is called *Papageys Eyland*, or *Parrot's Isle*, from the great Number of those Birds§. It abounds with several Sorts of Guinea Fruits, and serves for a Place of Refuge to the Natives of *Prince's Isle* in Time of War, being fortified by Nature. Since 1601 they have some Pieces of Cannon and Muskets here, which they took-out of a *Dutch* Vessel that had put-in here, after having massacred and eaten the Crew. They did the same after to some *Spaniards*; but of late they are grown less savage, by the Resort of Ships here, though they are still very uncivilized.

Their Constitution. THIS King of *Pongo* is, by the Natives, called *Muni Pongo*, or, *Lord of Pongo*; *Muni* in their Language, as well as that of *Kongo*, signifying a *Lord*, a Title they prefer to that of King, as was practised by the ancient *Romans*¶.

BOSMAN, who was sixteen Days in this River, says, that one of the Islands takes its Name from the King, the other from the Prince

of this River, two great Lords; But that they both were desolate and wild when he was there in 1698, those Lords having left them, and gone to live on different Branches of the River, of which there is a great Number*.

TWO Leagues within the River, according to *Bejman*, there lies a Bank of Sand of eight Fathoms. The Shore runs North and South. In the Mid-Channel is twelve or thirteen Fathom, which in half a League lessens to four, six, and seven; so that you may sail close to the shore and anchor, there being Ground*. It is observed by *Bejman*, that the Soundings are very irregular here, first ten, then fifteen; next Cast five, and presently twelve Fathom Water, as if the River's Mouth was filled with Rocks: Likewise, that you must wait the Flood to carry you into the River, for the Ebb is too strong to sail against. The Author experienced, and farther takes Notice, that for some Leagues this River is navigable with small Ships, but that he knew neither its Breadth nor Length.

SEVERAL Ships visit this River as well on account of Trade as the Convenience here is for resitting and cleansing of Vessels. Those who come hither on this last Account, unlade their heavy Furniture, as Guns, Anchors, Water-Barrels, &c. on *Prince's Island*; and by Help of a flowing Tide, get their Ships as far on Land as possible, that at Ebb they may repair them all round: But great Ships may get some Misfortune by lying dry; and one of the *Dutch* Cruizers, in the Author's Company, chose rather to heave her down by *Bejman's* Ship, by which Means he could come at her Keel to clean her.

THE Trade of this River, which consists in Elephants Teeth, Wax, and Honey, is sometimes indifferently quick, especially if no Ships have been there lately, which seldom happens; for the *Zeland* Interlopers visit it the whole Year round to cleanse and trade. Here also they lay-in Wood and Water, which otherwise might be had as well at *Cape Lopez*§.

BOSMAN designed to have traded with the Natives for Ivory and Wax; but found them so troublesome, that he was glad to get rid of them, by turning them to another of the Company's Ships there. They appeared the worst to him, as coming from *Whidah*, where he dealt with a civil People for an hundred Times more than all

* *Barbot's* Description of *Guinea*, p. 390.

† *Barbot* sailed down the River to *Sand Point*, it cannot be so much.

‡ *Bejman's* Description of *Guinea*, p. 401.

§ *Arctus* says, there is a remarkable high Mountain in *Pongo*, and that the other

Isle not far from it abounds with Bananas, Yams, Oranges, and other Fruits. *Pongo* then must be *Koning's* Isle,

and the other, *Papageys*. *Bejman* seems to make them different Isles.

¶ In the *Pilots*, *Koning's* Isle lies to the North of *Papageys* Isle.

§ *Barbot*, as before.

¶ *Bejman*, as before, p. 401.

§ *Bejman*, as before, p. 401, & seq.

† But according to *Bejman*, who says from the Isles they sailed down the River to *Sand Point*, it cannot be so much.

‡ *Bejman's* Description of *Guinea*, p. 401.

§ *Arctus* says, there is a remarkable high Mountain in *Pongo*, and that the other

Isle not far from it abounds with Bananas, Yams, Oranges, and other Fruits. *Pongo* then must be *Koning's* Isle,

and the other, *Papageys*. *Bejman* seems to make them different Isles.

¶ In the *Pilots*, *Koning's* Isle lies to the North of *Papageys* Isle.

§ *Barbot*, as before.

¶ *Bejman*, as before, p. 401.

§ *Bejman*, as before, p. 401, & seq.

¶ *Bejman*, as before, p. 401, & seq.

¶ *Bejman*, as before, p. 401, & seq.

¶ *Bejman*, as before, p. 401, & seq.

¶ *Bejman*, as before, p. 401, & seq.

¶ *Bejman*, as before, p. 401, & seq.

¶ *Bejman*, as before, p. 401, & seq.

¶ *Bejman*, as before, p. 401, & seq.

¶ *Bejman*, as before, p. 401, & seq.

¶ *Bejman*, as before, p. 401, & seq.

¶ *Bejman*, as before, p. 401, & seq.

¶ *Bejman*, as before, p. 401, & seq.

¶ *Bejman*, as before, p. 401, & seq.

¶ *Bejman*, as before, p. 401, & seq.

¶ *Bejman*, as before, p. 401, & seq.

¶ *Bejman*, as before, p. 401, & seq.

¶ *Bejman*, as before, p. 401, & seq.

¶ *Bejman*, as before, p. 401, & seq.

¶ *Bejman*, as before, p. 401, & seq.

¶ *Bejman*, as before, p. 401, & seq.

¶ *Bejman*, as before, p. 401, & seq.

¶ *Bejman*, as before, p. 401, & seq.

¶ *Bejman*, as before, p. 401, & seq.

¶ *Bejman*, as before, p. 401, & seq.

¶ *Bejman*, as before, p. 401, & seq.

¶ *Bejman*, as before, p. 401, & seq.

¶ *Bejman*, as before, p. 401, & seq.

¶ *Bejman*, as before, p. 401, & seq.

¶ *Bejman*, as before, p. 401, & seq.

¶ *Bejman*, as before, p. 401, & seq.

¶ *Bejman*, as before, p. 401, & seq.

¶ *Bejman*, as before, p. 401, & seq.

¶ *Bejman*, as before, p. 401, & seq.

¶ *Bejman*, as before, p. 401, & seq.

¶ *Bejman*, as before, p. 401, & seq.

¶ *Bejman*, as before, p. 401, & seq.

¶ *Bejman*, as before, p. 401, & seq.

¶ *Bejman*, as before, p. 401, & seq.

¶ *Bejman*, as before, p. 401, & seq.

¶ *Bejman*, as before, p. 401, & seq.

¶ *Bejman*, as before, p. 401, & seq.

¶ *Bejman*, as before, p. 401, & seq.

¶ *Bejman*, as before, p. 401, & seq.

¶ *Bejman*, as before, p. 401, & seq.

¶ *Bejman*, as before, p. 401, & seq.

¶ *Bejman*, as before, p. 401, & seq.

¶ *Bejman*, as before, p. 401, & seq.

¶ *Bejman*, as before, p. 401, & seq.

¶ *Bejman*, as before, p. 401, & seq.

¶ *Bejman*, as before, p. 401, & seq.

¶ *Bejman*, as before, p. 401, & seq.

¶ *Bejman*, as before, p. 401, & seq.

¶ *Bejman*, as before, p. 401, & seq.

¶ *Bejman*, as before, p. 401, & seq.

¶ *Bejman*, as before, p. 401, & seq.

¶ *Bejman*, as before, p. 401, & seq.

¶ *Bejman*, as before, p. 401, & seq.

¶ *Bejman*, as before, p. 401, & seq.

¶ *Bejman*, as before, p. 401, & seq.

¶ *Bejman*, as before, p. 401, & seq.

¶ *Bejman*, as before, p. 401, & seq.

¶ *Bejman*, as before, p. 401, & seq.

¶ *Bejman*, as before, p. 401, & seq.

¶ *Bejman*, as before, p. 401, & seq.

¶ *Bejman*, as before, p. 401, & seq.

¶ *Bejman*, as before, p. 401, & seq.

¶ *Bejman*, as before, p. 401, & seq.

¶ *Bejman*, as before, p. 401, & seq.

¶ *Bejman*, as before, p. 401, & seq.

¶ *Bejman*, as before, p. 401, & seq.

¶ *Bejman*, as before, p. 401, & seq.

¶ *Bejman*, as before, p. 401, & seq.

¶ *Bejman*, as before, p. 401, & seq.

¶ *Bejman*, as before, p. 401, & seq.

¶ *Bejman*, as before, p. 401, & seq.

¶ *Bejman*, as before, p. 401, & seq.

¶ *Bejman*, as before, p. 401, & seq.

¶ *Bejman*, as before, p. 401, & seq.

¶ *Bejman*, as before, p. 401, & seq.

¶ *Bejman*, as before, p. 401, & seq.

¶ *Bejman*, as before, p. 401, & seq.

¶ *Bejman*, as before, p. 401, & seq.

¶ *Bejman*, as before, p. 401, & seq.

¶ *Bejman*, as before, p. 401, & seq.

¶ *Bejman*, as before, p. 401, & seq.

¶ *Bejman*, as before, p. 401, & seq.

¶ *Bejman*, as before, p. 401, & seq.

¶ *Bejman*, as before, p. 401, & seq.

¶ *Bejman*, as before, p. 401, & seq.

¶ *Bejman*, as before, p. 401, & seq.

¶ *Bejman*, as before, p. 401, & seq.

¶ *Bejman*, as before, p. 401, & seq.

¶ *Bejman*, as before, p. 401, & seq.

¶ *Bejman*, as before, p. 401, & seq.

¶ *Bejman*, as before, p. 401, & seq.

¶ *Bejman*, as before, p. 401, & seq.

¶ *Bejman*, as before, p. 401, & seq.

¶ *Bejman*, as before, p. 401, & seq.

¶ *Bejman*, as before, p. 401, & seq.

¶ *Bejman*, as before, p. 401, & seq.

¶ *Bejman*, as before, p. 401, & seq.

¶ *Bejman*, as before, p. 401, & seq.

¶ *Bejman*, as before, p. 401, & seq.

¶ *Bejman*, as before, p. 401, & seq.

¶ *Bejman*, as before, p. 401, & seq.

¶ *Bejman*, as before, p. 401, & seq.

¶ *Bejman*, as before, p. 401, & seq.

¶ *Bejman*, as before, p. 401, & seq.

¶ *Bejman*, as before, p. 401, & seq.

¶ *Bejman*, as before, p. 401, & seq.

¶ *Bejman*, as before, p. 401, & seq.

¶ *Bejman*, as before, p. 401, & seq.

¶ *Bejman*, as before, p. 401, & seq.

¶ *Bejman*, as before, p. 401, & seq.

¶ *Bejman*, as before, p. 401, & seq.

¶ *Bejman*, as before, p. 401, & seq.

¶ *Bejman*, as before, p. 401, & seq.

¶ *Bejman*, as before, p. 401, & seq.

¶ *Bejman*, as before, p. 401, & seq.

¶ *Bejman*, as before, p. 401, & seq.

¶ *Bejman*, as before, p. 401, & seq.

¶ *Bejman*, as before, p. 401, & seq.

¶ *Bejman*, as before, p. 401, & seq.

¶ *Bejman*, as before, p. 401, & seq.

¶ *Bejman*, as before, p. 401, & seq.

¶ *Bejman*, as before, p. 401, & seq.

¶ *Bejman*, as before, p. 401, & seq.

¶ *Bejman*, as before, p. 401, & seq.

¶ *Bejman*, as before, p. 401, & seq.

¶ *Bejman*, as before, p. 401, & seq.

¶ *Bejman*, as before, p. 401, & seq.

¶ *Bejman*, as before, p. 401, & seq.

¶ *Bejman*, as before, p. 401, & seq.

¶ *Bejman*, as before, p. 401, & seq.

¶ *Bejman*, as before, p. 401, & seq.

¶ *Bejman*, as before, p. 401, & seq.

¶ *Bejman*, as before, p. 401, & seq.

¶ *Bejman*, as before, p. 401, & seq.

¶ *Bejman*, as before, p. 401, & seq.

¶ *Bejman*, as before, p. 401, & seq.

¶ *Bejman*, as before, p. 401, & seq.

¶ *Bejman*, as before, p. 401, & seq.

¶ *Bejman*, as before, p. 401, & seq.

¶ *Bejman*, as before, p. 401, & seq.

¶ *Bejman*, as before, p. 401, & seq.

¶ *Bejman*, as before, p. 401, & seq.

¶ *Bejman*, as before, p. 401, & seq.

¶ *Bejman*, as before, p. 401, & seq.

¶ *Bejman*, as before, p. 401, & seq.

His Cabin, this Commerce is worth. To sell one Tooth, *as* they would sometimes haggle a whole Day, go five or six Times away, and return again, ask and bid as if in a Fish Market, and come to no Resolution.

Indians, As great Lovers of Brandy as they are, they will not touch a Drop on-board till they have had a Present; in making of which, if you are too long, they have the Assurance to ask, if you imagine that they will drink for nothing? Thus they must be hired to drink your Liquor up, *b* otherwise you will not trade for one Tooth among them.

AFTER the Author had given-off Trade, a strange Troop came on-board, to whom he offered some Brandy, and would have sent them to the other Dutch Ship. They refusing to drink without a Present, which the Author had no Mind to, marched-out of his Cabin; but understanding he did not design to trade, they all very humbly returned, begging what he first proposed. He told them, he was not then at Leisure, and they went-off with dry Lips.

THEY are very ready to make you Presents at your first Arrival, but much readier to receive others in Return, in which, if you are too slow for them, they will ask for it; nay, and take their own back if yours be not a better. In short, they differ from Beasts only in Shape.

Their Character. ARTUS says, the Inhabitants of *Rio de Gabon* are a fierce, cruel People, being always at War both by Sea and Land. They spare nobody, and Strangers least. The Dutch felt their Cruelty in 1601, when they seized a Spanish Vessel, and two Dutch Barks, one called the *Palmtree*, the other the *Morain*, belonging to *Delft*, murdering the Crews. The same Author adds, that the Men are great Thieves, and the Women impudently wanton, reckoning it a great Honour to be caressed by Strangers: So that their Husbands will freely offer them to the Europeans, not excepting the King himself. They are no way scrupulous with regard to Incest, the Mother cohabiting with the Son, and the Father with the Daughter.

BOSMAN observes, that though there be but a small Number of Inhabitants on this River, yet they are divided into three Classes; one for the King, another for the Prince, and the third for enjoying themselves in Quiet. The two former are always at War, but not openly, for which the Author thinks they are not strong enough; but they rob one another by Night, and return home with Blows or Booty, as it happens.

For want of something better, they are proud

of a Dutch Name, with which, coming aboard, *Indians, Dress.* they immediately make you acquainted; imagining the Dutch value them more on that Account, and are well-pleased to be called by this borrowed Name.

ACCORDING to ARTUS, they cover their Nakedness with Mats neatly made of the Bark of Trees, and painted red. These they adorn with the Skins of Monkeys, or other wild Beasts, with a Bell hung in the Middle. They all go bare-headed, having their Hair strangely cut, or tied-up. Some have small Caps made of Twigs, or the Bark of the Cocoa; others have Bundles of Feathers fastened with Iron Wire or Plates. They dye their Bodies red, with the Decoction of a certain Wood. Some carry Rings in their Noses, Ears, or Lips: Others insert Pieces of Ivory in the same Parts. Some make a Hole in the under Lip, through which they thrust their Tongue. The Ear-Rings of others are so heavy as to weigh near a Pound. They also put Sticks in their Ears. Most wear a Girdle of Buffalo's Skin with the Hair on, which does not meet by at least a Hand's Breadth, but is fastened with a String before. In this they flick their Knives, which are broad and short, carrying them before.

THE Women wear many Bracelets of Copper *Wires* or Pewter, very heavy: Round their Waist they have Mats of Reed. They live like Savages. When sleepy, they lie on the Ground. Some lay under them a Quilt, or Mats made of Straw. The Women's Business is to carry Water, and to gather and dress the Fruits or Roots. The same Author adds, that their Skin is cut into such various Figures, both Women and Men, as are wonderful to behold.

BOSMAN gives no particular Account of their Dress: He only says, that their Cloathing is like that of other Negroes, but very poor and wretched; and that they deal with the sailors for all their cast-off Cloaths, and thank themselves very fine, dressed-up in them. They are very fond of Hats and Perukes, which they wear, but after a Manner remarkably dismal. Formerly a great Trade was driven here by the Dutch Sailors in old Perukes, for which they got Wax, Honey, Parrots, Monkeys; in short, all Sorts of Refreshments whatever they pleased, in Exchange: But for these four Years so many Wig-Merchants have been here, that the Sailor wears the Trade is ruined; and though his Stock costs him nothing, yet it does not turn to Account.

THEY are mostly large, robust, well-shaped Men. They besmear their Bodies with Elephant's and Buffalo's Fat, and a Kind of red

* Bosman's Description of Guinea, p. 404, & seq. p. 125, & seq. *Dijmar*, as before, p. 402.

* *Artus*, in de *Bry's Ind. Orient.* vol. 2, Part. 6.

* *Artus*, as before, p. 124, and 125.

*Dress of the People of Cape Lopez Gonsalvo and
Rio Gabon.*



Rio Gabon Colour; which makes them stink so abominably, especially the Women, that you may wind them a Furlong off: But nothing that is Woman comes amiss to a Sailor, who for a Knife, or such a Trifle, may have a Mistress here^a.

Their Weapons and Diet. THEIR Weapons, according to *Artus*, are *Assagays* and Darts, and Bows and Arrows, generally poisoned. They have a peculiar Weapon not unlike our Spears^b, only that the Points stick farther out. They always carry a Dagger in their Hands, and have some with three Points, very dangerous. Their Drums are narrow at the lower End. Their Spears are neatly made, for they have good Smiths. When they go to War, the Women carry their Arms.

THEIR chief Food are Yams, Potatoes, and Bananas. The latter dried, they use instead of Bread^c. They have some other Roots, and Sugar-Canes. They also dry Fish and Flesh in the Sun to keep. They eat lying on the Ground, out of wooden Platters (for only their *Mani*, or Governor, has Pewter Plates) in a very slovenly, dirty Manner.

THEY drink none at their Meals, but afterwards will guzzle till they get fuddled. Their Liquor is either Palm-Wine, or *Melasso*, which is a Mixture of Honey and Water like our Mead^d. According to *Bosman*, excessive Brandy-drinking seems the innate Vice of all Negroes; but these excel their Brethren in it, in this consuming all they can come at. They will sell a tolerable Elephant's Tooth for a Quantity, which they will be sure to drink-out before they part; nay, sometimes before they leave the Ship.

WHEN they are half drunk, if one chance to get a Dram more than his Comfort, they fall a fighting, without any regard to King, Prince, or Priest; who, on such Occasions, lay about them briskly with their Fists, that they may not be accused of being idle Spectators. These Heroes are so warm and vigorous at the Work, that Hats, Perukes, Coats, or whatever they have, are thrown overboard.

THE best of it is, that these Brandy-Toppers are not very nice; so that you may lengthen your Liquor with half Water, while a little *Spanish* Soap, to bring a Scum at Top, makes it good Proof. This once passed so well, that they would fain have laid-in a Stock of it^e.

THESE People are the most wretchedly poor and miserable that *Bosman* ever saw^f. He fancies that most of them depend chiefly on Hunting

and Fishery; for he saw no Signs of Agriculture, no Corn nor *Milbia*, during his Stay^g.

ARTUS says, their Houses are artfully built of Reeds and Canes, covered with *Banana* Leaves, and much handsomer than those on the Coast of *Guinea*.

THE King's Palace, called *Golipatta*, is larger than the other Buildings, and his Dress different from that of the People; consisting mostly in Beads of Bone and Shells, dyed red, and strung together, like a Chaplet, round his Neck, Arms, and Legs. His Face is painted white. His Subjects are very obedient. Before the Gate of his Palace is planted a Brass Cannon, with some other Guns, sold him by the *French*. Of these the Negroes are very fond.

ACCORDING to the same Author, the Language of the Natives of *Rio de Gabon* (as well as their Religion) is the same with that of *Cape Lope Gensalvo*; and sooner learned than that on the *Gold-Coast*, because they speak slow.

THEIR Religion has nothing remarkable. They worship the Sun and Moon: Some of them adore Trees; others the Earth, for producing Sustainance to them, on which Account they will not spit on the Ground^h. *Bosman* adds but little to this short Account: He only says, that they are very superstitious, and had a great Number of Idols; but of what Sort, and what their Belief, his Stay was too short to be informed in.

He likewise concluded, from the small Respect they shewed each other, that every free Person lived for himself, without troubling his Head with King or Prince; who have the empty Title only, without any Shadow of Powerⁱ.

IN 1600, there were on this River three powerful Kings, of whom one resided in *Kajembo*, on the North-Side; the second in *Gaben*, on the South-Side; and the third in the Isle of *Pongo*, who is the strongest. This last Prince was continually at War with the King of *Gaben*, and in Alliance with him of *Kajembo*: On the contrary, the Natives of *Rio Gabon*, are in Alliance with those of *Cape Lope Gensalvo*.

IN the Morning, they assemble to wait on their *Kharapenfo*^j, or Governor, and being admitted into his Presence, fall on their Knees, clapping their Hands, and crying *Fins, Fins*, which, in their Language, signifies, *Good-morrow*^k.

^a *Bosman's Description of Guinea*, p. 423, and 405, & seq.

^b *Murex*. ^c *Bosman*, p. 406, says, they eat unripe Bananas roasted, which seem to be their chief Food; and that they have also Yams, Potatoes, and small Beans, but in no great Quantity.

^d *Artus*, in *de Bry's Ind. Orient.* Part 6. p. 124, & seq.

^e *Bosman*, as before, p. 403.

^f The same, p. 402.

^g The same, p. 406.

^h In the Original, *Choucoussé*.

ⁱ *Artus*, as before, p. 124, and 126.

^j *Bosman*, as before, p. 405, & seq.

^k The same, p. 406.

Ben Tishon.

King, a
Blacksmith.

IN *Bafman's* Time, there was but one *Mani*, a King, in the River *Gubon*, as hath been already observed: And his Majesty, like an honest Man, instead of fleecing his Subjects, followed the Trade of a Blacksmith to get his Bread; yet not neglecting other chance Jobs, the chief of which is letting-out his Wives to the *Europeans*; but, notwithstanding this, he is, like the rest, a very poor Man.

The Season
and Weather.

THEIR Winter here is from *April* to *August*; during which Time, the Heat is excessive, and the Weather dark and gloomy, with the perpetual Rains, which the Ground sucks-up as fast as they fall, leaving no Signs of Wet. These Rains swell the Rivers, which, at these Seasons, abound in Fish.

THEIR Days and Nights are equal. Their Winter begins in our Spring, and their Summer with our Autumn; whence their Summer is cooler than their Winter.

Wild Beasts.

THE Land about this River incredibly abounds with wild-Beasts, especially Elephants, Buffalos, and wild-Boars.

AT *Sandy Point*, above-mentioned, *Bafman*, with the Captain and nine or ten Servants, went ashore, and for an Hour pursued an Elephant which had kept Pace with the Ship for more than a League: But lost Sight of him at last in a Wood, very luckily; for they knew not then the Danger of attempting that Beast, with a few Men armed only with Muskets.

Elephants
and Buffalos.

IN their Return from this Chace, they met five Elephants together, who looking at them as if not worth their Anger, suffered them to pass quietly; which Civility they acknowledged by pulling-off their Hats.

EVERY Morning the three following Days, *Bafman* went to chace some of the wild Beasts, particularly wild Hogs, which afforded them most Diversion. The second Day, they met a Troop of above three hundred, and began the Hunt furiously: But they were all too nimble except one, which they cut-off from his Companions, and forced him into a Thicket; where they had shortly mastered him, but that in the Middle of the Thicket finding the Skeleton of an Elephant all entire, they quitted one Prize to enjoy the other. The Teeth, when taken out, weighed seventy Pounds.

THE third Day, they found, in room of wild-

Boars, above an hundred Buffalos; and coming near a Parcel of eighteen or twenty, shot half a dozen Bullets, but did not seem to hurt any of them; for they all stood still, but looked angrily, as if inclined to resent the Affront.

Natural
History.

THESE Buffalos were red, with strait Horns extending backwards, about the Size of an Ox: As they ran, they seemed lame behind, which however did not hinder them from being very swift. The Negroes told them, that when these Beasts are shot, and not mortally wounded, they fly upon the Men and kill them. The Author was apt to believe this, because about ten Years before, some *Dutchmen* hunting here, one let fly at a Buffalo, which seizing had instantly killed him but for his Companion; who however, in firing, missed the Buffalo and mortally wounded the Man; after which, the Beast soon trod-out the remaining Snuff of Life.

THE Negroes, in this Game, go more warily to work: Having first observed the Buffalos Haunts, in the Evening they get-up into a high Tree, and shoot at them from thence: If they succeed, they carry them off when there is no Danger; if they miss, they sit still out of Danger, by which Means they kill several.

THE Buffalos Flesh here is very good, and fat enough, by Means of the Meadow Ground about *Sandy Point*.

THE Land does not seem very fertile, or fit either for Corn or Roots, as far as he had seen, viz. from the Mouth of the River to the *Prince's* Island: But they have Fruits in great Plenty; and the River is prodigiously stocked with all Sorts of good Fish, with which the Author's Ship stored herself for the whole Voyage.

THE River also abounds with Crocodiles and Sea-Horses. The Banks are bordered with shady Trees. Near the Mouth, out at Sea, are seen many of those small Whales the *French* call *Sargassos*, the *Dutch*, *Nord Kapers*, and the *English*, *Grampussers*, commonly about forty Foot long. The Coast, as far as *Cape Lopez*, abounds with the Remora, or Sucking-Fish.

THE Negroes Manner of fishing is very diverting: Passing along the River-Side in a Canoe, when they see a Fish, they dart their *Assagay* at him, at which Sport they are so deatrous as rarely to miss their Aim.

* *Bafman's* Description of *Guinea*, p. 406.

† See before, Vol. II. p. 348. b.

‡ p. 730. d.

§ *Arctus*, in *de Roy's Ind. Orient* Part. 6. p. 126.

¶ *Bafman*, as before, p. 408, & seq.

• See before, Vol. II.

• *Bafman*, as before, p. 407; and *Barbot's* Description of *Guinea*, p. 390.

las Ser-
nitas.

SECT. III.

The Coast from Rio Gabon to Cape Lope
Gonfalvo.

Places on the Coast. Islands and Shoals. Oli-
bato Bay: Soundings and Tide: Cape Lope
Gonfalvo: Road or Harbour. Village at the
Cape. Olibato Town: The King's Residence:
Boats, Fish, and Provisions: Wood and Wa-
ter: Commodities.

Places on the
Coast.

THE Coast, from the South Point of Rio
Gabon, runs South by West to Olibato, or
Olibatto River, about twenty-five Leagues. From
the Point to Nazareth River, are about nine
Leagues: Thence to the Angra, or Bay of the
same Name, six; to another River, twelve;
and thence to Olibato River, four and an half.

THE Coast is low and woody as far as the
White Downs, called las Seranitas; which are
distinguished by the Portuguese into *Fanais Pe-
quenas*, on the North Side of Nazareth River,
and *Fanais Grandes*, which lie beyond and ex-
tend South to near Angra de Nazareth. The
English call these Downs, after the Portuguese,
Little and great white Cliffs; and the Dutch,
Kleyne, and Groot Klippen, and some, *Witte-
beek*.

FROM Olibato River, the Land turns short to
the North-West, for about eight Leagues, a di-
rect Course; forming a narrow, flat Peninsula,
scarce two Leagues over in the broadest Part,
and gradually decreasing as it approaches the
Point, or Head, at North-West, which is the
famous Cape Lope Gonfalvo. This Cape, with
the Eastern Land opposite to it, called Angra de
Nazareth, and the adjacent Coast at South
South-East, make the Bight, or Bay, of Oli-
bato.

Islands and
Shoals.

NEAR the Entrance of Nazareth River, on
the North Side, is an Island called *Fanias*, or, as
in our Pilots, *Finas*; and from the South Side
runs out a triangular Bank, for five Leagues,
along the Entrance of the Bay of Olibato. This
Bay contains several Islands and Shoals: *Porrim*
Isle lies near the Middle, between the Coast of
Nazareth Bay and Cape Lope. To the East of
it is a much smaller Island; and to the West,
nearer the Cape, a Shole, called the French Bank.

a South-East of *Porrim* Isle, is another Island, ly-
ing opposite to Olibato River, from whose western
Side a Shole extends to within a little Way of
the said Isle.

THE Coast of Olibato Bay, from Angra de Olibato Bay,
Nazareth to the North-East Point of Rio de Oli-
bato, is covered with a large Bank; which grows
broader as it approaches the River, till it comes
to the Channel of its Mouth, and beyond the
same Channel extends again to the Shore North-
b West of the said River.

As there are about this Bay, moving Sands
and unequal Grounds, which are dangerous if a
Ship touch on them, it is necessary to keep con-
stant Soundings, coming-in or going-out, to
prevent Hazard: But when once you bring the
Cape to bear West, you are past all Danger, and
have good Ground.

GENERALLY along this Coast, about a ^{Soundings}
League and half from Shore, you meet with ^{and Tides}
twelve or thirteen Fathom Water; but nearer
Land, from four to six, safe Anchorage.

THE Tide, coming-out from Cape Lope, sets
South and West by South, in March, April, and
May, along the Coast, which very much faci-
litates the Navigation across the Equator in
those Parts: For at that Time, it is rare for the
Tide about the Cape to set North, as it some-
times happens in August and September, which is
owing to the South Winds forcing it North;
the Fresh coming constantly out of the great
River Zaire, though distant from this Coast near
an hundred Leagues to the South-East.

CAPE Lope Gonfalvo, which lies about eighteen ^{Cape Lope}
Leagues from the River Gabon, is the extreme ^{Gonfalvo.}
Limits of the Gulf of Guinea; and a little more
to the South, begins the Country of Angola.
Artus says, it is easily known, being the Land
that projects farthest to the West of all the Coast.
It is in one Degree, South Latitude.

e CAPE Lope Gonfalvo, in sailing by it, at five
Leagues Distance West, appears, according to
Barbot, like a low, flat Island; but is a long,
narrow Peninsula, stretching, from the Conti-
nent, several Leagues to Sea; and, like the ad-
jacent Main, is low, flat, and swampy, all over
wooded. It took its Name from the Portu-
guese, who first discovered it.

ARTUS observes, that there is at the Cape ^{Road or}
a good Harbour, either for anchoring or careen-
ing; especially for Ships homeward bound, Pro-
b

a In the Pilots, *Little and Great Serenite*.

c *Artus* and *Osman* place it in one Degree below the Line: *Barbot* in fifty-five Minutes.

d Description of Guinea, p. 411.

e Lope, or Lope Gonfalvo, and simply Lope.

f *Artus* observes, that the Cape is low and steep, yet
looks bluff with Trees, has some Savannas, or Plains, behind. See his Voyage, p. 196.

as before, p. 395.

Cape Lope
Constable.

visions being cheap and plenty: But that it is proper to sound carefully as you enter, on account of the Sands, or Shoals^a. *Bosman* likewise says, that the Road is good, provided you keep off the Sand-Banks; but that they are not dangerous in fair Weather, and are passable at high-Water, as he had experienced^b.

According to *Barbot*, the usual Road for Ships of Burden is in fifty Degrees South Latitude, East by South of the Cape, just within the Point: For though the Land of the Cape be low and flat, tall Ships may come up close to the Point in deep Water; contrary to the Nature of flat Lands, where the Water is usually shallow in Proportion to the Lowness of the Coast. It must be observed, about one League and an half East North-East, Seaward of the Cape, is a Shoal or Bank, between which and it, is a large Channel, fifty Fathom deep^c. *Atkins* is more particular as to the Situation of the Road, for he says you may anchor in two Fathom, the Cape North-West by North, the Watering-Place South by East, each a Mile and an half distant; and that the Cape makes a safe and pleasant Bay^d.

Village at
the Cape.

NEAR the Cape is a Hamlet of twenty Houses, or Cottages, inhabited by a small Number of Blacks, only when Ships are here, but that is almost continually; a great Number of European Vessels annually resorting here to take-in Provisions, or cargoes, but chiefly the Dutch^e.

Olibato
Town.

BOSMAN says only, that the Natives have a few Houses on Shore, but that their proper Dwelling-Place is a little beyond this Port, upon a River called *Olibato*^f. This, doubtless, is the Town of *Olibato*, which lies towards the Mouth of the River. *Barbot* says, it is about six Leagues by Land from this Village to Cape Lope. (several Cottages and Hamlets being in the Road) and that it is the Residence of Prince *Thomas*, Son of the King of Cape Lope, as he is called by the European Traders: From whence to the King's Residence is five or six Leagues, going up the River in Canoes. Before the Palace at *Olibato* are some Iron Guns mounted on Carriages, bought from the French, but seldom used. The Town where the King resides consists of about three hundred Houses, made of Bulrushes, interwoven and covered with Palm Leaves, like those of *Gabon*. There are other Villages and Towns about

The King's
Residence.

the Country five or six Leagues from each other^g.

Tobolou, or
Perron.

The principal Men or Grandees are distinguished by the Titles of King, Prince, and Admiral, though, like those of *Gabon*, they have only the Name. In short, says *Bosman*, the two Countries exactly agree in their Manner of living, only the latter are far more civil and conversable^h.

THE River *Olibato* is doubtless that, where, according to *Arctur*, the Dutch traded in his Time for Teeth. He adds, that it abounds with River Horses and Crocodiles; whence, says he, some conjecture it is a Branchⁱ of the Nile.

THE same Author observes, that the Natives here are more civilized than those of *Rio Gabon*, as, Elephants, Buffalos, Dragons, Snakes, Apes, Monkeys, and others, terrible and destructive^j. *Atkins* says, the Cape is the Resort of Buffalos, and that he saw a dozen Head at a Time; also grey Parrots^k.

According to *Bosman*, this Place exceeds *Gabon* in Shoals of Fish. Casting a Net one Morning, they caught enough to suffice ten Ships^l. *Barbot* says, that at a single Cast they sometimes take as much as will load a small Boat. He adds, that there are also Plenty of Oysters hanging on the Boughs of the Mangrove-Trees, which surround the Bay.

THE Provisions gotten here are Buffalos, Hogs, Fowl, Bananas, Potatoes, and Yams; besides Fish, and *Piments de Rala*, or long Pepper, and Purslain.

ALL Vessels which arrive here shoot-off four Guns to give Notice of their Approach to the Country; who immediately repair from *Olibato* and other inland Places to the Cape to sell such Necessaries as they have, which are Water, Wood for Fuel, and some Provisions. The Natives keep a Stock of Wood ready cut by them in Billets two Foot long, a Boat-load of which they sell for a Bar of Iron; or when dearest, give a Fathom of it at the same Price. The fresh Water is taken-out of a large, muddy Pond, lying near the Cape, and keeps good at sea; being, by many Sailors, reckoned wholesomer than that of *St. Thomas* or *Prince's* Isle. Every Ship for Anchorage, and the Liberty of Wood and Water, pays a small Duty, not exceeding half a

^a *Arctur*, in *de Bré's Ind. Orient.* vol. 2. Part. 6. p. 127.

^b How then can the Cape be in fifty-five Minutes? as he says it is.

^c p. 394.

^d *Atkins's Voyage*, p. 196.

^e p. 412.

^f *Barbot*, as before, p. 196, 197 seq.

^g *Bosman*, as before.

^h The like Civility, joined to their Ignorance of the inland Countries, made the early Writers imagine the Nile the Mother of all the large Rivers of Africa; and many give into that Absurdity still.

ⁱ as before.

^j *Bosman*, as before, p. 411.

^k *Bosman's Description of Guinea*, p. 415.

^l *Barbot's Description of Guinea*,

^m *Bosman*, as before,

ⁿ *Bosman*, as before.

^o *Arctur*, as before,

^p *Atkins*,

Natural History. dozen Knives, and a Bottle or two of Malt a or Channels, where two Shores contract the Waters into a narrow Compass, the Tides are strong and high, as well as regular; but on the dead Coast slow and low, not to be above two or three Foot, increasing as you advance towards the Bay and Channels of Benin; and this is farther evident at Cape Corse, Sukkenda, Kammenda, and other Places: For whenever the Land rounds and checks, the Flowings there will be a Foot or two more than on an even Coast, though next adjoining.

Commodities. BOSMAN says, that the Trade here, as well as at *Ris de Gabon*, consists in Elephants Teeth, Wax, and Honey, with which it abounds; but so many Ships touch here, that much cannot be expected, yet one of the Dutch Company's Yachts, in 1698, dealt for three or four thousand Pound Weight of Teeth as well as Wax, and at other Times has had more. To these Commodities *Barbet* adds Camwood. According to the same Author, the Goods proper for this Place are Knives, called *Bosmans*, Iron Bars, Beads, old Sheets, Brandy, Malt Spirits, or Rum; Axes, *Kouris*-Shells, Annabas, Copper-Bars, Brass-Basons from eighteen Pence to two Shillings; Firelocks, Powder, Ball, and Shot. The Camwood here belongs to the King, who sells it at twenty-five or thirty Shillings per Ton, according to the prime Cost of the Goods in Europe. Sometimes it is not above twenty Shillings per Ton. The best Sort grows in swampy, wet Grounds, being hard, heavy, and of the best Red; whereas that growing on high, dry Grounds is lighter and paler. The better Sort is esteemed at London near as good as the *Sherbro* Camwood.

S E C T. IV.

The Currents, Rains, Trade-Winds, and Land d Breezes on the Guinea Coast.

Currents regular, except in Rivers and Channels. Causes of the Irregularity. Their Affinity with Tides. Rains, regular Return of: Supplied from Land Vapours. Trade-Winds, Causes: The Earth's Rotation; Rarefaction of the Air; and Disposition of Coasts. The calm Latitudes, how best passed. Land and Sea-Breezes, how caused at Noon.

HAVING finished our Description of Guinea, we shall, in the last Place, subjoin the natural History of the Coast, with respect to Currents, Rains, and Winds, as it is given us by Mr. Atkins in his Voyage to these Parts.

Current regular, except in Rivers, &c. ACCORDING to this Author, Sir Isaac Newton's Principle of Gravity, by which he solves all the Phenomena of the Tides, may be applied to the Currents here. Atkins first states the Facts, and then draws the Conclusion.

In the Rivers of Gambia, Sierra Leona, Gabon, the Straits and Channels of Benin, and through the whole Coast, the Flowings are regular on the Shores with this Difference: That in Rivers

and Channels, where two Shores contract the Waters into a narrow Compass, the Tides are strong and high, as well as regular; but on the dead Coast slow and low, not to be above two or three Foot, increasing as you advance towards the Bay and Channels of Benin; and this is farther evident at Cape Corse, Sukkenda, Kammenda, and other Places: For whenever the Land rounds and checks, the Flowings there will be a Foot or two more than on an even Coast, though next adjoining.

THE Currents here set sometimes two Knots an Hour along Shore, sometimes with, sometimes against, the Wind; though generally to Leeward, sometimes off, sometimes on, rippling like a Tide: At other Times a smooth, unmoved Surface for Days together, and never felt or imperceptible at eight or ten Leagues Offing.

THE Currents set-in on both Shores to the Bay of Benin; from the Southward about and beyond Cape Lopez; and from the Westward along the *Papa* (or *Pape*) Coast, that is, to Leeward; for the Winds are as commonly deflected along Shore as the Currents. This all Ships experience in their Passage to Angola, if they hold the Land on-board, or if they endeavour to get Westward on the *Papa* or *Gall-Craft*.

THE Cause of this Diversity, Atkins thinks, *Coast of* is the Formation of the Land, together with the Weather and the Winds.

THE Land being in a strait Line, without Gulphs or Bays, unless that remarkably large one of Benin and Kalabar, the Flux of the Sea, when it comes to be bounded by the Shores, has a natural Tendency there, seen in growing stronger as it advances towards them on both Sides: Because such Gulphs, in a Contraction of the Waters, bears some Resemblance to Channels, which every-where, in Proportion to their Breadth and Depth, and the Sea they stand open with, have more or less Current or Tide along their Shores inward, assisted partly by the Winds, which are deflected and tend on both Sides towards the Bay, and partly by the Weather; clear and hot Sun-shines drawing more Vapours from the Seas next the Shores in all Places (and especially in Bays with Shoals) to be expended in Exhalations, Mists, Fogs, and Rains. The Rains again may, by being incessant for a Month or six Weeks, and in a Rotation upon different Parts of the Coast, contribute to some little Diversity of Strength.

ANOTHER Reason of Currents tending mostly to Leeward here, is, that the Flood being propagated from a vast Southern Ocean, takes its Course along Shore; but the Ebbs revert easily and equally from all Parts to the Ocean, and

* *Barbet's* Description of Guinea, p. 395. See also *Bosman's* Description of Guinea, p. 411, & seq. The same, p. 411.

* *Barbet*, as before, p. 395, & seq.

therefore make so little Alteration of the Stream, ^a as it is seldom and scarcely at all felt at a very small Distance from it. The most that they found, was when they were open with the Bite of *Demin*. They left *Whidah* the latter End of July, where, though the Currents in the Road were very strong to Leeward, and the Winds altogether South-West, they found they could with Ease have weathered any of the Islands; which would have been impossible, had the same Current in the Road extended across the whole Bay: Nay, b their getting so far to the Southward, that is, to Windward, will be very difficult to account for, unless the Waters, received into this Bay by those Currents, are allowed to reverberate in the middle Space, though intensely towards the main Ocean.

FROM these slight Observations, the Author thinks, it may be concluded, *First*, That in all Places, Currents and Tides have a very great Affinity: That it is principally the Formation of the Lands which drives them into the one or the other: If contracted between two Shores, so as to form a Channel, the diurnal Elevation of the Ocean, by the Moon, will make there a Tide rapid in Proportion to its Breadth, Depth, and Sea it is open to: And if an open Coast, like *Guinea*, those Tides become Currents. This agrees with the Observations he has met with in the Voyages to these Parts, particularly those in the sixth general one set forth by the *India* Company, relating to the Channel between the Eastern Coast of *Africa*, and the Island of *Madagascar*: for being too deep and broad for the Direction of a Tide, there are Northern and Southern Currents, as the elevated Sea rolls round the North or South End of the Island: And what still more confirms the Remark, they are strongest where the Channel is narrowest and less; and vary on different Points of the Compass, as the Sea spreads more in the Passage cross the Line.

Secondly, THAT all Currents and Tides are found only on Shores, and indiscernible at ten Leagues Distance from a Coast, or the Mouth of any Channel; are also variable from the same Influence of the Moon, and Change of Weather.

THERE is a Return of vernal and autumnal Rains through the whole Coast, but the former are longer and more incessant on both Sides the Equator. They begin at *Sierra Leona* in May; at the *Gold-Coast* and *Whidah* in April, preceded by South and South-East Winds. On the other Side of the Line again, the vernal Rains fall at Cape Lopez in October, at *Angola* in November; and being cloudy Weather the Air is then cooler, and therefore called, by the Inhabitants, *Winter*.

THE Cause of this Regularity, *Athius* thinks inscrutable, only it is a general Observation, that the Sun at or nigh the Equinox inclines to Rain every-where. Dr. *Cloyton* says, that there are frequent and great Rains at *Virginia* in April and September; and the same is observed in other Countries.

AT Cape Corle, in the Year 1721, they ceased the End of May, after they had fallen for six Weeks before, almost without Intermission; only some Hours heavier, and chiefly in the Nights, with continued Thunder, Lightning, and Calm. What Breezes they felt were all Southerly, (directly upon Land) the Clouds that contained the Rain succeeding one another from the Ocean as it were orderly. If the Horizon brightened, as it does by Spirits at these Seasons, the Sun is felt with redoubled Heat and Fervour.

THE Mist and Hazeiness of the Horizon (as *Suppld* ways on the Coast) and those great Dews, which, out of the rainy Seasons, fall every Night on the Shore, and rarely or never two Miles from it, where the Ships anchor, are corroborating Proofs, of what is just before hinted under the Article of Currents, that the Vapours supplying these or Rains, are extracted from Coasts and Shallows more abundantly than from the main Ocean. This would otherwise be seen and felt, and in greater Measure at Sea, from so large a Body of Waters surrounding, but is so far from happening, that Exhalations of all Sorts diminish in Proportion as the Distance from Land increases.

AGAIN, the Winds from Sea, which are the Winds that usher in these Rains, are known to spring-up but a few Leagues from Shore, the Trade obtaining in all these Latitudes; and though any regular Periods of it, under this Vicinity of the Sun all the Year, may be inscrutable, yet when they do come, they visibly bring-on the Land-Clouds, loaded with aqueous Vapours, a more rarefied Air there naturally attracting them, and helping their Fall.

THE Winds, different from those in *Europe*, *Trade* in these Voyages, are either peculiar to warm Latitudes, such are Trade-Winds, Land and Sea Breezes; or to the Coast, as Tornados and Air Mattans.

TRADE-Winds are Easterly, blow fresh Night and Day all the Year, and every-where round the Globe on the Ocean, whether *Atlantic*, *Indian*, or *American*: For the Soil and Position of Lands, though the same Cause of them subsists more powerfully, gives uncertain and various Deflections. They will extend to thirty Degrees of Latitude, North, when the Sun is on that Side the Equator, and as far South when on the

^a See before, Vol. I. p. 361, and 391.

Philosophical Transactions, N^o 201, p. 781, and the Abridgement, vol. 3. p. 575, & seq.

before, p. 136, & seq.

^b *Athius's* Voyage to *Guinea*, &c. p. 132, & seq.

^c See

^d *Athius*, as
other.

Manual
History.

other; deflecting where he is farthest off, here a to the North-East, there to the South-East, and always nearest to the East Point on the Equinoctial, or where he is vertical.

Earth's Rev.
olution.

THE best Cause, he says, assigned for those Phenomena, are, *First*, The daily Rotation of the Earth, Eastward, upon its Axis, whereby the Air, or Wind, goes Westward in respect of the Superficies; and this is farther countenanced, in that these Winds are found only in the largest Circles, where the diurnal Motion is swiftest, and also because they blow as strong in the Night as Day; hence, on the Coast of Brazil, as near Guinea.

THE second permanent Cause of these Effects, Dr. Halley ascribes to the Action of the Sun-Beams upon the Air and Water every Day, considered together with the Nature of the Soil, and Situations of the adjoining Continents.

THE Sun heats and rarefies the Air exceedingly in all Latitudes between the Zodiac, evident from the anhelous Condition it subjects most Animals to in Calms; and therefore the Air, from Latitudes more without his Influence, as more ponderous, presses-in to restore the Equilibrium; and to follow the Sun must come to the Eastward. The westerly Winds that restore this Balance, from Latitudes beyond the Tropics, would, he fancies, be as constant, and keep a Circulation, was the whole a Globe of Waters: As it is, they are, from thirty Degrees to sixty, abundantly the most predominant, with a Deviation to North or South, on various Accidents; blow with more Force, because, among other Reasons, the Equilibrium is restored to a greater from a lesser Circle; and, as it were to confirm this, are received into the Trade-Wind, with a Deflection of North-East, or more Northward, at the Point of Reception.

Disposition
of the Air.

On the Coast of Guinea, North of the Equinoctial, the true Winds are Westerly, keeping a Track with the Shore, where it trenches all Eastward. From the River Gabon again, under the Line, the Land stretches to the Southward; and the Winds wheel from South-East to South by East, to keep nigh a Parallel with it. In both, the Shore seems to deflect the true Trade, in the same Manner Capes do Tides or Currents, to that Point where there is the freest Passage. If at any particular Seasons (as in the Rains) the Winds become more Southerly, and set full upon the Shore, they are weak; and as the Sun is at such Time on this Side the Equinoctial, it is, probably, to restore an Equilibrium to that Air at Land, more rarefied from a stronger and more reflected Heat.

BESIDES these, the Author made farther Remarks in other Voyages; which follow.

First, You must be distant from the Influence of Land to Windward (from this Coast thirty or forty Leagues) before the Trade blows true and fresh; and then, as there are no Storms, a Ship bound to America will make a constant and smooth Run of forty or fifty Leagues every twenty-four Hours.

THE Flying-Fish are only in this Verge: Here are also Bonetos, which pursue them; and for Birds, Gannets, Boobies, Tropic-Birds, and Shearwaters.

Secondly, THE North-East and South-East Trade-Winds on this and the other Side of the Line, by blowing obliquely on each other, are, *Atkins* thinks, the Reason of becalming the Latitudes between four and twelve Degrees, North, the Point of Contest as they found it: For, *First*, the East-Southerly Trade Wind ordinarily extends to four Degrees North, which is the Limit of the East-Northerly one. Calms and small Breezes may vary a little from this Station, according to the Sun's Place, but not much; and near the Windward Shores, they will be attended with Thunder, Lightning and perpetual Rains. *Secondly*, This all Ships actually find in their Passage from Guinea to the West-Indies, in any Month, or from England thither, the true Trade decreasing as they approach those Latitudes; and up between Cape Verde and the Islands the Calms are said, by all Navigators, to be constantly attended with Rains and Thunder. *Thirdly*, The same Thing happening in the Commencement of these Winds, Latitude twenty-seven, or twenty-eight Degrees, North, is undeniably owing to a like Cause.

FROM all this he would infer, that, in sailing from Guinea, these calm Latitudes are easiest passed within an hundred Leagues of the Continent of Africa; and that at America, a Ship should not get into them till she has nigh run her Distance; for the Land, either to Windward or to Leeward, he thinks, gives a better Advantage to the Breezes than nearer or more remote. Ships from England do not want this Caution so much, because the North-East Trade does not fall till a little beyond the Parallel of Barbados, the southernmost of the English Colonies.

LAND and Sea Breezes are Winds of no great Extent: The former, much fainter and inconsistent, will blow off an Island to a Road Stead, be on which Side of it you will: But whether at the same Time or no, or now here, now there, the Author was not experienced enough to say; though their Weakness and Inconstancy make

1578.
Lopez.

either Way defensible. They are found at all Shores within or near the Tropics, the Sea-Breeze coming-in at about ten in the Morning, refreshing and enlivening every Thing. The Land-Breeze (which it does succeed) is at the same Distance from Sun-set, or later, small, sultry, and stinking, especially if from Mangroves, stagnating Waters, &c. They seem to arise entirely from the Heat of the Sun-Beams. That the Air is more rarefied by their Reflections on the solid Body of the Earth than on a Fluid, is certain; therefore, till the rarefied Air, made so by three or four Hours Sun, is brought to an Equilibrium, the Breeze must be from the Sea at all Parts of the Coast, because at all Parts the same Cause is operating: And if this Rarefaction is limited by a determined Height of the Atmosphere, the Sea-

a Breezes that are to fill-up the Vacuities will last a determined Time only, two, three, or more Hours. This is Fact, but whether properly solved, he says, must be submitted.

Or Affinity with this are the frequent Breezes found with meridian Suns at Shores, even to the Latitude of England, though very still before and after. Again, the Land-Breezes, which succeed at Night, when the Sun has lost its Power, seem, by their Weakness, to be the Return of Air heaped-up by the preceding Day's Heat; which, like other Fluids, when, from any Cause, higher or fuller in one Part than another, of course has its Reflux to make an even Surface.

We have already given an Account of Tornadoes and Air Mattans, or *Harmatani*, from the same Author and others.

Voyage to
Kongo.How caused
at Night.

B O O K III.

VOYAGES and TRAVELS to KONGO and ANGOLA.

W I T H

A DESCRIPTION of those Countries and their Inhabitants.

C H A P. I.

The VOYAGES of Edward Lopez and Andrew Battel.

S E C T. I.

The VOYAGE of Edward Lopez, a Portuguese, to Kongo, in 1578.

INTRODUCTION

Occasion of the Work. Several Editions. English Edition: Order and Contents: Critical Remarks: Maps and Cuts.

Description of
the Work.

THIS Voyage, with the Description of Kongo, and other Countries, annexed to it, was drawn-up by Philip Pigafetta, an Italian, from the Memoirs of Lopez; who,

c after he had been several Years in Kongo, was sent by the King on an Embassy to the King of Spain and Pope, to require Aid against his Enemies, and Priests to instruct his Subjects in the *Remiss* Religion. Lopez being disappointed at the Court of Madrid went to Rome, where he met with no better Success as to the Subject of his Embassy. There, as it should seem, at the Request of Antonio Migliare, Bishop of San Marco and Commendador of Santo Spirito, he put such Remarks as he had committed to Writing into the Hands of Pigafetta; who supplied them in several Respects by the Account he farther received from him in Discourse. The Work was

* Atkins's Voyage, p. 144. & seq.

See before, vol. II. p. 701.

See the English Translation, p. 217. finished

1578.
Lopez.

finished in 1589, soon after which, Lopez sailed a for Kongo, promising to return to Rome as soon as possible, with full Information concerning the Nile, and other Matters not sufficiently handled in the Tract he left behind.

Several Editions.

ALTHOUGH Lopez wrote his Remarks in Portuguese, yet Pigafetta has published his Relation in Italian; and has even given most of the local and proper Names according to the Orthography of that Language, in which he certainly did the Part of a just Translator. It was, a few Years b after, at the Request of Mr. Hakluyt, rendered into English by Abraham Hartwell, the same who before had given a Translation of Minadoi's History of the Wars between the Turks and Persians. Afterwards it was done into Latin by Augustin Cassiodore Reimut, and placed, by the de Brys, at the Head of their Collection of Voyages to the East.

English Edition.

THE English Translation was published at London in 1597, intitled, *A Report of the Kingdom of Kongo, a Region of Africa, and of the Countries that border round about the same, &c.* These bordering Countries include near one half of Africa, and must have been described by Lopez from the Report of others; for it does not appear, that he was in any of them himself. The Book is printed in Quarto, and contains two hundred and seventeen Pages, besides the Dedication to the Archbishop of Canterbury, Hartwell's Preface, and Contents. The Latin Version takes up sixty Folio Pages, and has an Index, which the English wants.

Order and Contents.

It is divided into two Books, the first containing fourteen Chapters.

1. Voyage from Lisbon to Kongo. p. 1.
2. Air of Kongo. Colour of the Inhabitants. Winds, Rains, and Snow in those Parts. Stature and Features of the Natives 13
3. Colour of the Mulatto, or Children sprung from a Portuguese and Black 18
4. Extent of Kongo and its Borders. The Western Bounds, or Sea-Coast 26
5. The Northern Bounds, and Countries adjoining 30
6. Eastern Bounds, and Confines 38
7. South Bounds 43
8. Extent of Kongo in its present State 58
9. The six Provinces of Kongo. First, *Bamby* 60
10. Second Province, *Songo* 64
11. Third Province, *Sundi* 66
12. The fourth, *Pango* 69
13. The fifth, *Batta* 120
14. The sixth, *Pemba* 104

THE second Book consists of ten Chapters.

1. Situation of the chief City of Kongo p. 107

2. First Introduction of the *Romish* Faith, and the Portuguese Commerce there p. 118
3. Wars between Don *Alfonso*, the second Christian King, and his Brother. The Miracles wrought, and Conversion of the Natives 133
4. Peopling of *St. Thomas*. Affairs of Religion. Death of two Kings by the Portuguese and Lords of Kongo. Banishment of the Portuguese 150
5. Invasion of the *Jakbo* (or *Jaggas*). Their Customs. Take the royal City 159
6. Ambassador and Aid from Portugal. Discovery of the Mines refused. Embassadors to Spain for Priests, sent with Samples of the Ores. Lopez turns Religious 163
7. The Court of Kongo. Habit of the People before and after their Conversion 177
8. Countries towards the Cape of Good Hope; and of the Nile 186
9. Kingdom of *Sofala* 192
10. The Coast from thence to the Red-Sea. Of *Prester John's* Empire, and Origin of the Nile 215

1578.
Lopez.

THE whole Relation is penned in great Confusion, the Matters being huddled together without any Order or Contrivance. Hartwell would excuse Pigafetta, from the Disorder in which he found the Memoirs of Lopez; but as that Editor divided the Work into Books and Chapters, he ought also to have digested his Remarks into some proper Method. The Style is likewise excessive verbose; and has, no doubt, acquired many additional Redundances from an English Translation of that Age.

BOTH Editions are adorned with Maps and Maps and Cuts; those of the English are cut in Wood, those of the Latin in Copper. In the latter there are three Maps; the first of Kongo; the second, the South Part of Africa; the third, Egypt, Abyssinia, and the neighbouring Countries.

THE Cuts are fourteen in Number.

1. Baptism of the Lord of *Songo*.
2. King of Kongo giving Audience to the Portuguese.
3. Demolishing of the Kongo Images.
4. Habit of the Men.
5. The Men armed for War.
6. Way of carrying Persons,
- 7 and 8. Other Methods, ditto.
9. The Zebra, a beautiful Beast.
10. Habit of the Women.
11. Animals of Kongo, with the Banana-Tree.
12. The *Anaki*.
13. The *Jaggas*.
14. Women of *Mensmetopa*.

1578.

Lopez.

THE *English* Edition has two Maps and ten a Cuts, the same with the fourth, fifth, sixth, eighth, tenth, and eleventh, in *de Bry's* Edition; excepting that in Place of this last, we find only the *Banana-Tree*, and Duplicates are given of that and the eighth. These we conceive to be all that are in the Original; presuming that the *de Brys*, according to Custom, have added the rest from their own Fancy.

THE VOYAGE.

Lopez leaves Lisbon. *Course of sailing to Kongo. He is sent Ambassador, from the King of Kongo, to Philip the Second of Spain. The Ship forced to sail to America. Another Ambassador sent in his Stead. Lopez arrives in Spain: Becomes a Religius: His Embassy unsuccessful.*

Lopez
leaves
Lisbon

IN the Year 1578*, (the same in which Don Sebastian, King of Portugal, set-out on his Expedition for the Conquest of *Morocco*) Edward Lopez, a Native of *Bombay*, (a Town twenty-four Miles from *Lisbon*, on the South-Side of the *Tago*) sailed, in the *St. Anthony*, for the Port of *Luanda* in *Kongo*†. The Vessel belonging to his Uncle, was laden with a proper Cargo, and had a small Pinnace in Company. They stopped at *Madera* to take in Refreshments and Wine, as also Confections and Sweetmeats, which are excellent there. From thence they sailed, coasting the *Canary* Islands belonging to *Spain*, and put into *St. Antony*, one of the *Cape Verde* Isles, which they did not see till they were close on it. From hence they steered to *St. Jago*‡, the chief of these Isles, a Bishop's See, where they got fresh Provisions. The Portuguese frequent these Isles, and traffic with the Natives for Glass-Beads, and such Toys, in which they greatly delight; as also Dutch Cloth, Caps, Knives, and coloured Cloths. Opposite to these Isles, on the Continent, are the Countries and Rivers of *Guinea* and *Sierra Leona*, which is a famous Mountain.

Course of
sailing to
Kongo.

FROM the Isle of *San Jago*, they steered towards *Brazil*, in order to gain the Wind, there being two Ways of sailing from thence for the Port of *Luanda* in *Kongo*. The first is by keeping the Coast of *Africa*, the other by steering South and South-East, to the Latitude of the Cape of *Good Hope*, or the Height of twenty-seven or twenty-nine Degrees South, where they fall-in with those general, or Trade-Winds,

which blow there all Summer. They took this latter Course, and having met with those Winds, tacked about, and bore up North North-West for *Kongo*. In twelve Days, they reached the Isle of *St. Helena*, which they had no Expectation of seeing; from whence, in seventeen more, they arrived at the Port of *Luanda*, which is an excellent Harbour.

Course to
Kongo.

THIS was the first and last Time that this Course was ever undertaken. The other Way from *St. Jago* is by *Cape Palmas* and the Island of *St. Thomas*; thence passing *Cape Lopez* Genesabou, you come to the River *Zaire*, from whence *Luanda* lies South about an hundred and eighty Miles.

DON SEBASTIAN having been overthrown in *Morocco*, Don Henry, the Cardinal, succeeded him, to whom the King of *Kongo* wrote for Priests, but the Cardinal's Death prevented an Answer. Philip, King of *Castile*, having obtained the Crown of *Portugal*, sent Notice thereof to the Captain of *St. Thomas*, with Letters for the King of *Kongo* to the same Effect. The Captain thereupon dispatched *Sebastian da Costa*, with the Title of Ambassador, to the King of *Kongo*, who sent him to King Philip with his Answer; wherein he profered to discover to him the Mines till then concealed, sending withal several Samples of the Ores: He likewise pressed him to send over Store of Priests. *Da Costa* set sail, but was cast away, with all the other Passengers, on the Coast of *Portugal*: However, among other Things, a little Chest, wherein were some Instructions relating to his Voyage, was washed to Land.

AS soon as the King of *Kongo* heard of this Disaster, he resolved to send one of the Lords of his Court on an Embassy to *Spain*: But some Contest arising among the Competitors for this Honour, the King, to avoid disobliging any of them, pitched on Lopez, the Author of this Relation, who had been for a considerable Time in the Country, and happened at that Juncture to be at Court. The King delivered him ample Instructions in Writing, to treat in his Behalf both with his Catholic Majesty and the Pope; besides Letters of Credence, safe Conduct and Recommendation to all other Christian Princes.

THE Purport of this Embassy to the King of *Spain*, was to inform him of the bad State of Religion in *Kongo*, occasioned by the late Wars; and intreat a sufficient Number of Priests to support the Faith but newly founded. Lopez had Instructions also to shew Philip the Samples of

* Purchas says, 1588.

† Duarte is the Portuguese Name for Edward.

‡ They had on board

Francisco Martinus, the King's Pilot, an experienced Sailor.

§ *St. Jago* is the Original, this being the Indian Name.¶ Lopez's Report of *Kongo*, p. 1, & seq.

1578.
Lopez.

Metals, and offer free Liberty of Trade to the Portuguese, a Privilege never granted to any of his Predecessors. With regard to the Pope, he was to kiss his Feet in the King of Kongo's Behalf, lay before him the miserable State of the *Romish* Religion in that Kingdom, and solicit for a Recruit of Priests.

Forced to
America.

LOPEZ being thus dispatched, left the Court, but remained eight Months longer in the Country, transacting some Affairs for the King. At length, in January^b, being then Summer in Kongo, he embarked aboard a Vessel of an hundred Tons, bound for *Lisbon*. Near the Island of Cape Verde, the Ship being old sprang a Leak in the Forecastle, and let in much Water: So that the Wind blowing very strong, and there being no Possibility either of reaching those Islands, or the Main of *Africa*, much less of pursuing their Voyage, they resolved to run before the Wind for Safety to the *American* Islands. In short, after many Dangers of perishing from Storms, the Leak, and Want of Provisions, they arrived at the Island of *Cubagoa*, near that of *Margarita*. Here having refitted and refreshed, they passed over to *Kumana* on the Continent, in the new Kingdom of *Granada*, where the Ship sunk as soon as it arrived in Port: But the Passengers were all saved, though they afterwards fell dangerously sick, owing to the Hardships and Distresses they had endured at Sea.

Another Em-
bassador sent.

LOPEZ fell sick among the rest, and before he could recover his Health, the *Flota*, which used every Year to sail from that Coast to Spain, departed: So that he was constrained to stay for a new Fleet; and thus lost a whole Year and an half. Mean time the King of Kongo, having never received any Tidings of him, concluded he was dead; and therefore sent another Ambassador, called Don *Pedro Antonio*, the second Person in his Kingdom, with the same Instructions that had been given to Lopez. He was accompanied by *Gaspard Diaz*, a rich Portuguese, and of great Account, who had been long an Inhabitant of Kongo. His Business was to see that the Ambassador wanted nothing, and to join his Endeavours to procure what the King so earnestly desired. They had Orders likewise, in case they met with Lopez, to have Recourse to him for his Advice and Assistance.

THEY put to Sea, but their Voyage proved unfortunate: For the Ship being taken by the English, and carried towards their own Coast, there ran aground. Don *Pedro* and his Son were drowned; but his Associate *Gaspard*, with a few others, escaping, arrived in Spain at such Time as the Author *Diaz* had newly gotten to *Ma-*

drid, and entered upon the Charge of his Embassy. Hereupon *Gaspard* wrote to acquaint him, that he intended to return to Kongo without going to Court, which he accordingly did; whether because the Cardinal was dead, or for some other Cause, Lopez could not learn.

WHEN Lopez had recovered his Health at *Kumana*, he sailed to *Sun Demings* in *Hispaniola*. Here he found a Portuguese Vessel, which designed to sail with the Fleet that came thither from the *Tierra Firme*. The Ships all got safe to *Teveira*, one of the *Islets*, and from thence arrived at *St. Lucar de Barameda*, at the Mouth of the *Guaudelquivir*, and so to *Seville*. From *Seville* he travelled into Portugal to see his Friends, and furnish himself with all Things necessary for his Journey to the Court. There he had a kind Reception from the King, to whom he opened the Contents of his Commission: But the Embassy came to nothing, principally, on two Accounts: First, the Death of the King of Kongo; and then Philip was so intent upon making a Conquest of England, that he could think of nothing else.

LOPEZ, chagrined at this Disappointment after all his Labour, reflecting likewise on the Uncertainty of human Affairs in general, and of his own in particular, resolved to quit the Sword, and take on him the Cross. Thereupon, renouncing the World in *Madrid*, he put on a grey, coarse Habit; yet then, because he would not neglect the good Intent of the deceased King of Kongo, he went to Rome to declare the Purport of his Embassy to Pope *Sixtus Quintus*. This he did, and withal made a Vow to lay out the Riches he had in Kongo (which were not small) in building a House for the Maintenance of several learned Men and Priests, to instruct the Youth of that Country in the liberal Arts and Sciences, the Languages and *Romish* Religion; in order to raise-up Persons capable of propagating the Faith in their natural Tongue. He proposed likewise to erect an Hospital for the Entertainment and Cure of poor, sick People of his own Communion coming from foreign Countries into Kongo. One End of his going to Rome, was to obtain of the Pope a License to found this Seminary and Hospital, with a Grant of Jubilees, Indulgences, and other Dispensations. His Sanctity gave him a gracious Audience, but when he understood that the Kingdom of Kongo belonged to the King of Spain, he referred the Matter wholly to his Catholic Majesty. Here *Pigafetta* had from him the Memoirs, out of which he composed the Relation; soon after which Lopez returned to Kongo, as hath been before set forth.

^a Lopez's Report of Kongo, p. 167, & 169.
gual, *Guaudelquivir*. The true Name is, *Mad al Ebb*,
2d 169.

^b The Year is not mentioned.
of the Great River.

^c In the Ori-
Lopez, as before, p. 172.
8 & C. T.

SECT. II.

The Travels and Adventures of Andrew Battel, in Angola, 1589.

Leaves off.

BATTEL was a Native of Leigh in Essex, and dwelt there after his Return from Kongo; being, as Purchas tells us, a near Neighbour of his*. The same Author adds, that he served abroad under Manoel Silveira Pereira, the King of Spain's Governor, at the City of St. Paul. With him he went far into the Country of Angola, their Army consisting of eight thousand Portuguese, and fifty thousand Negroes. He had been taken by the Portuguese on the Coast of Brazil, and was sent over to Kongo; in which, and the neighbouring Countries, he lived many Years, and was Sergeant of a Company†.

BATTEL, at his Return to England, seems to have published the Relation of his Voyage; such as we find it, in the third Volume of Purchas's Pilgrims, under the Title of, *The strange Adventures of Andrew Battel, of Leigh in Essex, sent, by the Portuguese, Prisoner to Angola, in which Kingdom and the adjacent Regions he lived eighteen Years.*

THIS Relation Purchas improved with several Particulars, which he received in Conversation from the Author; and has inserted many other Remarks (obtained the same Way) into his Description of Angola and Kongo. The Narrative contains sixteen Pages, and is embellished with a wooden Cut of the Zovera, or Zebra; which has the same Attitude with that in de Bry's Cuts to Lopez, but differs in the Marks or Streaks.

BATTEL seems, for the general, to be a faithful Author, and his Relation is the more valuable, as he is the only Englishman who hath published an Account of his Travels and Remarks in these Countries.

1. The Author taken in Brazil, and sent Prisoner to Angola.

Leaves England. Comes to the Isles Rolas near St. Thomas. Iha Grande in Brazil. Rio de la Plota. Battel taken, and sent to Angola: Trades for the Governor of Loanda to Longo: Escapes again: Crosses the River Dande: Pursued and taken: Is sent to the Wars. Incombe Town and Mountain. Bay of Cows.

Leaves England.

ANDREW BATTEL, in the Year 1589, sailed from the Thames with one Abraham Cocke of Limehouse; who was bound to the River of Plate with two Pinnaces of fifty Tons each, one called the *May Morning*, the other the *Dol-*

phin. They left the *Thomas*, April the twenty-sixth, and on the twenty-sixth put into Plymouth, where they took in some Provision. May the seventh, they put to Sea, but were driven back into the same Port, where they staid some Days, and then proceeded on their Voyage. After coasting Spain and Barbary, they came to Anchor in the Road of Santa Cruz; where the Captain put together his light Horseman, which he had brought in two Pieces. He set a high Value on this Boat, thinking it would have made his Voyage. This done, they ran for the Guinea Coast, where, keeping too close in Shore, they were becalmed.

HERE their Crew turned very sickly. Within three or four Degrees of the Equinoctial, they fell in with Cape de las Palmas, where they got some Refreshments to recover their Men. The Natives there made much of them, promising to trade, but it was with a treacherous Design; for they had like to have seized their Boat, and hurt their Men. From this Cape they bore South-West, but by the Current and Calms were driven down to the Isle of St. Thome, when they imagined themselves far-out to Sea. Being in Distress for Wood and Water, they put in at the South End between St. Thome and the Islands *das Ilhas das Rolas*. Here they rode very smooth, and with their light Horseman went ashore, thinking to have watered, but found none on the Island. They got, however, Plenty of Oranges and Plantains. They also met with a Village of Negroes, it being the Custom for the Portuguese at St. Thome, when their Slaves are sick or weak, to send them to the Isles of Rolas for their Recovery. Though there be no fresh Water, these Isles are very fruitful, and have Abundance of Palm-Wine. After refreshing themselves here, they burnt the Village, and sailing along the East Side of St. Thome, came before the Town; but durst not go near for the Guns of the Castle, which fired on them.

HENCE they steered East by South for the Continent of Africa, and in twenty-four Hours had Sight of Cape Lape Gonsalves. Being within three Leagues of the Cape, they tacked and bore West again for the Isle of St. Thome, turning-up the West Side of the Isle. Coming to a little Rivulet, which runs down from the Mountains, they went ashore with their light Horseman (six or seven Butts to fill Water; but fell into an Ambuscade of an hundred Men, which the Governor had laid for them, and lost a Man before they could get back to their Boat.

COCKE then determined to sail for the Coast of Iha Grande Brazil. About fifty Leagues from St. Thome, in Brazil,

* Pilgrimage, p. 765.
Pilgrims, vol. 2. p. 970.

† The same.

* See his Pilgrimage, as before.

* Purchas's

they

they fell among a Shole of Dolphins, which a
 Battel, greatly relieved them, following their Ship for
 thirty Days, till they made Land. They ran a-
 long the Coast of Brazil till they came to *Ilha*
Grande, which lies in five Degrees South Latitude.
 Putting-in between it and the Main, they hauled
 their Ships ashore, and cleaned them. In this
 Isle they found no Inhabitants, though it is very
 fruitful. When they had been here twelve Days,
 there came-in a small Pinnace bound for the
 River Plate, which wanted Water. They went
 on-board her, and took-out the Portuguese Mer-
 chant; who told *Cacke*, that in two Months there
 would be two Pinnaces here from the Town of
Buenos Ayres in the River of Plate. From this
 Place there go yearly four or five Caravels to
Bahia in Brazil, and *Angola* in Africa, with
 great Store of Treasure, which is transported
 over-Land from Peru into the River of Plate.
Cacke, desirous to make his Voyage, took some
 of the Dolphin's Men on-board, and sent the Dol-
 phin home again, this being her first Voyage.
 The Portuguese Merchant carried them to a Place
 in the Isle, where lived a banished Man, who had
 planted Store of Plantains; with which Fruit he
 told them they might go to the River of Plate,
 for their Provisions were almost spent.

Rio de la
 Plata.

WITH this hard Allowance they departed from
Ilha Grande, and were thirty-six Days in their
 Passage to the Isle of *Laber Marins*, which lies
 at the Mouth of the River of Plate. It is half
 a Mile long, has no fresh Water, but abounds
 so with Seals and Sea-Horses, that their light
 Horseman could not get ashore, till they beat
 them away with their Oars. The Isle is covered
 with them. On these they lived thirty Days,
 plying up and down the River in great Distress
 for Victuals. They then determined to run-up
 to *Buenos Ayres*, and with their light Horseman
 take one of the Pinnaces that lay at the Town:
 But just as they had gotten so far, they were
 driven back by a violent Storm at South-West,
 and obliged to shelter under *Ilha Verde*, or *Green*
Isle, which lies at the Mouth of the River on
 the North Side.

Battel taken.

HERE, being quite discomforted for want of
 Victuals, they gave-over the Voyage, and re-
 turned North to the Isle of *St. Sebastian*, which
 lies under the Tropic of *Copricorn*. There they
 went ashore to catch Fish, and some went-up
 into the Woods to gather Fruit, being in a
 Manner famished. There was at that Time at
 the Isle a Canoe full of Indians, who came from
 the Town of *Spiritu Santo*. These landing on
 the West Side of the Isle, advanced through the

Woods and took five of the Company, (among
 whom was *Battel*) and carried them to the River
 of *Janeira*. After this Mischance their Captain,
Cacke, put to Sea, but was never heard of more.

WHEN these English had remained four Months
 in the River of *Janeira*, *Battel* and one *Terner*
 (or *Turner*) were sent to *Angola* in Africa, to
 the City of *St. Paul*, which stands in nine Degrees
 South of the Line. Here, being taken-out of
 the Ship, he was imprisoned, and after sent-up
 the River *Quansa* to a *Garison Town*, an hun-
 dred and thirty Miles higher. When he had
 been here two Months, the Pilot of the Go-
 vernor's Pinnace died, and he was commanded
 to carry her down to the City; where, at his
 Arrival, he fell sick, and lay eight Months in a
 poor Condition, being hated, because he was an
 Englishman. Being at last recovered, *Don John*
Hurtado de Mendoza, who was then Governor,
 ordered him to go to the River of *Kongo*, called
Zayre, in a Pinnace, in order to trade for Ele-
 phants Teeth, Wheat, and Palm-Oil. This
 River *Zayre* lies fifty Leagues from the City (of
St. Paul) to the North, and is the greatest River
 on all the Coast. In the Mouth is an Isle, called
 the Isle of *Kalaher*, which had then a Town in
 it. Here they loaded their Pinnace with the
 Goods above-mentioned, and returned to *St.*
Paul.

SOON after, *Battel* was sent to *Longo*, fifteen
 Leagues to the North of the River *Zayre*, with
 Goods proper for that Place; as, long Glass Beads,
 and round blue Beads, Seed-Beads, Looking-
 Glasses, blue and red coarse Cloth, and Irish
 Rugs, which were rich Commodities. Here they
 sold their Cloth at a great Rate, for they had for
 one Yard of it, three Elephants Teeth that
 weighed an hundred and twenty Pound. They
 also bought a good Quantity of Palm-Cloth and
 Elephants Tails. In a short Time they got their
 Cargo. *Battel*'s Success in this Voyage made him
 very welcome to the Governor, who promised
 him his Liberty if he would serve him; so he
 failed in his Pinnace for two Years and an half
 on the Coast.

At the End of that Time a Dutch Ship came
 to the City, the Merchant of which promised to
 carry *Battel* away. Accordingly, when the Ship
 was ready to sail, he got privately aboard; But
 being betrayed by the Portuguese Sailors belonging
 thereto, he was brought back by the City-Sergeants,
 and put into Prison; where he lay with great
 Bolts of Iron two Months, apprehensive every
 Day of being put to Death. At last the Go-
 vernor banished him to *Massangano* to serve in

* Or, *St. Paul de Luanda*, commonly called *Luanda*, simply,
 given by *Battel*. The Portuguese write, *Caenza*, or *Coenza*.

* This is the English Orthography
 * Purchen's Pilgrims, vol. 2. p. 97.

1589, the Conquest of these Parts; where he lived miserably for six Years, without any Hopes of ever seeing the Sea again.

a would guide them to *Bamba*, where the Duke of *Angola* ^{*Portuguese*} lay.

Portuguese
2nd ed.

In this Fort there were some *Egyptians* and *Morijars* banished like himself. To one of these *Egyptians* *Battel* disclosed his Mind, telling him, it was better to venture their Lives for their Liberty, than continue in that miserable Place. The *Egyptians* seemed willing to make the Attempt, and told *Battel*, he would procure ten of his Consorts to go with them: So they got three *Egyptians*, and seven *Portuguese*. The Night of their Escape they seized the best Canoa they could find, and went down the River *Caanza* *. Being gotten as far as *Mani Kabech*, (who is a little Lord in the Province of *Elamba*) they went ashore with their twelve Muskets, Powder and Shot; sinking their Canoa, that the *Portuguese* might not know where they landed. They made a Fire in the Wood, at which they roasted some *Guinea* Wheat they brought with them from *Massangano*, having no other Provision.

As soon as it was Night, they began their Journey, travelling all Night and the next Day without finding Water; so that the second Night they were scarce able to march, being obliged to dig and scratch up the Roots of Trees and suck them to maintain Life. On the third Day, they met an old Negro, who was travelling to *Mani Kabech*. Him they bound and made guide them the Way to the Lake of *Kajansa*; and after a Day's March in the extreme Heat, reached the *Bansa*, or Town of *Mani Kajansa*, which lies twelve Leagues inland from the City of *St. Paul*. Here they were forced to ask Water, but were refused; on which they determined to use Force: But the Inhabitants seeing them desperately bent, called their Lord, or *Mani Kajansa*, who gave them Water and good Words, desiring them to stay all Night, with Intent to betray them; but they proceeded, and rested that Night at the Lake of *Kajansa*.

Angola
Dante.

The fourth Day, at Night, they came to a River lying North, which they passed with great Danger, it being full of Crocodiles. On the fifth Day, at Night, they reached the River *Dande*, and travelled so far East, that they were opposite the *Sereas*, or Mountains of *Mani Bangona*, who is a Lord, at War with the King of *Kongo*, to whose Country they intended to go. Here they passed the River, and rested half the Night. Two Leagues beyond the River they met some Negroes, who, on Enquiry, finding they were going to *Kongo*, told them they were in the wrong Way, and that they were *Masi Kongos* †, who

HOWEVER, they proceeded up the Country for three Miles East, till they found they were wrong; for they travelled by the Sun. On this they turned back to the West, but the Negroes opposed them with their Bows and Arrows: Hereupon they fired amongst them, killing four, which amazed them so, that they retired; yet they followed them four or five Miles, and wounded two of their Company with their Arrows. Next Day they came into the Borders of *Bamba*, travelling all that Day, and at Night could hear the Surge of the Sea. On the seventh, in the Morning, they found the Captain of the City was in Pursuit of them with some Horsemen, and a great Number of Negroes. This disheartened them so, that seven of the *Portuguese* hid themselves in the Woods. *Battel* and the four *Egyptians* thought to have escaped; but were so closely pursued, that they were obliged to shelter in a little Thicket, into which the Enemy poured a Volley of Shot, which made them disperse from each other.

BATTEL being thus left alone, reflected, ^{*Portuguese*} ^{*and*} ^{*taken*} that if the Negroes caught him in the Wood, they would kill him, so that he resolved rather to throw himself on the Mercy of the *Portuguese* and *Mulattos*. With this Resolution he issued out of the Wood, with his Musket charged, regardless of his Life. On seeing him, the *Portuguese* Captain, thinking they had been all twelve together, cried-out, Fellow Soldiers, I have the Governor's Pardon: If you will yield yourselves, you shall receive no Hurt. *Battel* replied, he was an *Englishman*, who had served six Years at *Massangano* in great Misery, and had escaped in Company with eleven *Portuguese* and *Egyptians*, who left him alone there; adding, that rather than he would be hanged, he would die amongst them. The Captain then came near, and bid him deliver his Musket to one of the Soldiers; protesting, as he was a Gentleman and Soldier, his Life should be safe, for his resolute Mind: Whereupon *Battel* surrendered-up his Arms.

THE Captain then commanded the Soldiers and Negroes to search the Woods, and bring-out the rest dead or alive, which was quickly done. They were all carried to the City of *San Paulo*, where *Battel* and the three *Egyptians* lay in Prison for three Months, with Collars of Iron and large Bolts on their Legs, and narrowly escaped hanging ‡.

ABOUT this Time the Governor sent four hundred Men, who had been banished *Portugal*, ^{*Portuguese*} ^{*and*} ^{*taken*}

* Here the *Portuguese* Orthography is used, *Masi Kongos*, as *Lopez* writes it. See *Pigafetta's* Report of *Kongo*, p. 47, and 181. [†] *Parebau's* Pilgrims, vol. 2. p. 972.

† In the Margin it is called, the River of *Bansa*.

‡ Or,

1589.

Battel.

up into the Country of *Elumbo*. *Battel* being, by Proclamation, for ever banished the City, to serve during Life in the Wars, marched with these Troops to *Bwansa*, a Lord subject to the Duke of *Bunhu*: From thence to *Samani Banja*, and next to *Namba Kalatuba*, a great Lord, who opposed them; but they reduced him to Obedience by burning his Town, on which he joined them with three thousand Negroes armed. From thence they went against *Sollankunga*, a petty Lord, who fought desperately, but was overcome; whence they marched to *Kembruhianga*, where they remained two Years. From this Place they made several Excursions, bringing many Lords into Subjection. Amongst the rest, being fifteen thousand strong, they marched to the *Outeira*, or Mountain of *Inkumbo*, burning by the Way all *Iogafu*, which belonged to the same Lord; and then came to the chief Town of *Inkumbo*, which lies on an Hill, half a Day's Journey to the Top.

The Chief attacked them with above twenty thousand Archers, and killed many of their Men: But their Shot obliged the Enemy to retire up into the Mountain; and their Chief sent one of his Officers to the Portuguese General with his Submission, which he would perform in Person next Day. Accordingly he entered the Camp in great Pomp with Drums, Pipes, and Pongos, or Waits, and was nobly received. He gave great Presents to the General and the Troops. On the Top of the Mountain was a great Plain, where lay his chief Town, very pleasant, abounding with Palm-Trees, Sugar-Canes, Potatoes, and other Roots, besides Oranges and Lemons. Here is a Tree called *Engeriaz*, which bears a Fruit as big as a Pome-*Water*, and has a Stone that is a present Remedy for the Wind-Colic, which appeared strange to the Portuguese. Out of the Mountain springs a River of fresh Water, which runs all along the Town. Here they remained five Days, and then marched farther-up the Country, laying all waste before them for the Space of six Weeks. Afterwards they returned to *Inkumbo*, with a great Booty in Slaves, Sheep, Goats, and *Margarita*-Stones, which are current Money in that Country. They remained incamped a League from the pleasant Mountain of *Inkumbo* for twelve Months. In this Expedition *Battel* was shot in his right Leg, and with many Portuguese and *Amulattis* was sent to the City (of *San Paulo*) to be cured.

THEN the Governor sent a Frigate out to the Southward with sixty Soldiers, and all Kinds of

a Goods, with whom *Battel* had Orders to embark. They sailed to twelve Degrees South Latitude, where they found a fair sandy Bay. The Natives brought them Cows and Sheep, Wheat and Beans: But they made no Stay, sailing-on to *Bahia das Vacas*, or the Bay of Cows, which the Portuguese call *Bahia da Torre*, because it has a Rock like a Tower. Here they anchored on the North Side of the Rock in a sandy Bay, purchasing a great Number of Cows and Sheep, bigger than those in England; and also got some very fine Copper, and a Sort of sweet Wood, called *Kakanga*, much esteemed by the Portuguese, with Plenty of Wheat and Beans. Having loaded their Bark, they sent her home, and fifty of them remained there, making a small wooden Fort to defend them from the Natives, who are treacherous. In seventeen Days they bought five hundred Head of Cattle. Ten Days after, the Governor sent three Ships, with whom they returned to the City.

2. *Battel's Adventures with the Jaggas, and Escape.*

Meets with the Jaggas: They invade Benguela: Plunder the Country. Battel left in Pledge with a Kongo Lord: Escapes to the Jaggas. These ravage the Country: Are opposed by Lord Kasoch. Battel escapes: Made a Sergeant by the Portuguese. The Success of these latter. Battel deserts their Service: Escapes to the Coast. The Portuguese Way of making War in Kongo.

IN the next Voyage *Battel* made along the Coast, they came to the *Morro*, or Cliff of the Jaggas *Benguela*, lying in twelve Degrees South Latitude. Here they saw a large Camp of Men on the South Side of the River *Kova*. Sending their Boat ashore for Intelligence, a Body of five hundred came to the Water Side. On asking who they were, they replied, they were the *Jaggas*, or *Jindes*: That they came from *Sierra de Lien*, and passed through the City of *Kongo*, travelling East of the great City of *Angola*, which is called *Danga*. The great *Jagga*, their General, came down to the Water Side to view the Portuguese, having never seen white Men before. On hearing they came to trade, he bid them welcome, and desired them to bring their Goods ashore. In seven Days they loaded their Ship with Slaves, which they had so cheap, that many did not cost

Inkumbo
Town and
Mountain.

The Bay of
Cows.

* *Parichas's Pilgrims*, vol. 2. p. 973.

* In the Original, it is *Gagas*, or *Gindas*: But *Parichas* observes, that *Battel*, in Discourse with him, called them *Jaggas*, and their Chief, the *Great Jagga*: so that he thinks he wrote them *Gagas*, instead of *Jaggas*, by a Mistake in Spelling. We have therefore changed *Gagas* into *Jaggas*, or *Jaggas*. Or, *Sierra Leona*. *Parichas* says, *Lopen* was deceived in their Original; but assigns no Reason to support what he asserts.

1589.

Battel.

a Rial a-piece, which in the City were worth twelve *Millis-Reys*.

BEING ready to fail, the great *Jagga* detained them, intreating their Boat to assist his Men in passing the River *Koua*; his Intention being to invade the Kingdom of *Benguela*, which lies on the North Side of it. They went with him to his Camp, which was regularly intrenched with wooden Piles or *Palifados*; where they had Lodgings provided for them that Night, and many Burdens of Palm-Wine and Flour sent them, with Cows and Goats.

They invade
Benguela.

IN the Morning, before Day, the General beat his *Gongo**, which is an Instrument of War sounding like a Bell, and in a loud Oration declared, that he would destroy the *Benguelas*. The Camp was presently in Arms, and marched to the River Side, where he had provided *Tingendas*†. The *Portuguese* being ready with their Boat, carried eighty over, and fired on the Enemy to cover their Landing, though many of the *Jaggas* were killed. By twelve o'Clock the whole Army got to the other Side.

THEN the General commanded all his Drums, *Tovales*, *Pater*, *Pengor*, and other warlike Music to strike-up, and fell-on the Enemy. The Action was very bloody to the *Benguelas*, who presently broke and fled; a great Number being slain, and the rest taken Captive, Man, Woman, and Child. *Hambiangymbe*, the Prince of the Country, with an hundred of his chief Lords, fell in the Field of Battle, and their Heads being cut-off, were laid at the Feet of the great *Jagga*. The Prisoners were brought into the Camp alive, and the dead Bodies eaten by the *Jaggas*‡, who are the greatest Canibals in the World; delighting in Man's Flesh, though they have Plenty of Cattle.

Plunder the
Country.

THE *Jaggas* plundered the Country after this Victory, and the *Portuguese* carried-on a brisk Trade with them for five Months, gaining considerably. However, they were not contented to settle here, though in want of nothing excepting Wine, the Land abounding in Cattle and Wheat, but no Palm-Trees.

AT the End of five Months, the *Jaggas* marched towards the Province of *Bambulo*, which lies five Days Journey inland, governed by a great Lord, called *Kalikanjamba*. In these five Months, *Battel*, with the *Portuguese*, made three Voyages to the City of *St. Paul*; but returning the fourth of *June*, they found the *Jaggas* gone. However, being loath to return without Trade, they resolved to go after them. For this End fifty of them landed, leaving the Ship in the Bay of *Ban-*

guela. After two Days March into the Country, they came to the chief Town of a great Lord, called *Mofarigofat*, which they found burnt to the Ground by the *Jaggas* in their Passage. To this Lord the *Portuguese* sent a Negro, whom they had bought of the *Jaggas*, bidding him say, that he was one of those Invaders Men left to carry them to their Camp. This Lord bid them welcome, for fear of the great *Jagga*, but detained them by Delays, till the *Jaggas* had quit- ted the Country. When he found they were gone, he would not let the *Portuguese* depart, till they had assisted him in his Wars. In these Parts they never saw white Men before, nor Guns. In short, they were forced to accom- pany him, and though they came back Victors, yet *Mofarigofat* would not dismiss them, unless they promised to return, and left a white Man as a Pledge of their Performance§.

THE *Portuguese* and *Mulattos* being earnest to get away, determined to draw Lots who should slay; but some not agreeing to it, they at last resolved among themselves to leave *Battel* behind, as being an *Englishman*. They left with him a Musket, Powder, and Shot, engaging to return in two Months, and bring the Lord an hundred Men to help him in his Wars: But this being only a Shift to get away safe, when the two Months were expired, *Battel* was hardly used. The chief Men of the Town stripped him naked, and were ready to cut-off his Head: But *Mofarigofat* delayed the Execution, still thinking the *Portuguese* would come. After that *Battel* had his Liberty, shifting for himself from one Town to another in the Territory of this Lord. At last, being in fear of his Life, he fled, determining to go to the *Jaggas* Camp.

HAVING travelled all Night, the next Day he arrived at a great Town, called *Kajihli*, stand- ing in a large Thicket. Here he was carried be- fore the Lord of the Place, and all the Inhabi- tants came to gaze on him, having never seen a white Man before. *Battel* by good Luck in this Place met some of the great *Jagga's* Men, with whom he went to *Kalikanjamba*, where their Camp lay.

ARRIVING in two Days at the Camp, he was welcomed kindly by the great *Jagga* their General. Here he determined to continue with these People, hoping they would travel so far West, that he might see the Sea again, and so have a Chance of escaping in some Ship. These *Jaggas* remained at *Kalikanjamba* four Months, having great Plenty of Cattle, Corn, Palm- Wine, and Oil; feasting and banquetting on

Voyage to
Angola.

Battel by
Fledge.

the *Jaggas*.

* Perhaps, *Koua*.
or Canoes.

† By others, *Gongo*. See the Plate of *Whisk* Weapons and Music.

‡ *Battel*, however, does not say he saw them eaten.

§ *Porcuba's* Pilgrims, vol. 2. p. 974.
human

1589.

Battel.

Rowing the Country.

human Flesh, which was a melancholy Spectacle *. a Journey of *Massangans*, before-mentioned, where the *Portuguese* have a Fort, he took his Measures so well, that he escaped with some Merchant-Negros, who came to the *Jagga's* Camp to buy Slaves, and got safe to that Place †.

There was at that Time in *Massangans*, a new Governor (of *Angola*) called *Sinar Juan Continho*, who had Authority from the King of Spain to conquer the Mines, or Mountains, of *Kambambe*. For this Service the King had given him seven Years Custom of all the Goods exported from *Angola*, on Condition he should build three Castles, viz. one in *Damla*, where the Salt Mines lay; one in *Kambambe*, where are the Silver Mines; and the third at *Babia das Vacas*, or the Bay of *Gowu*. This Governor was so bountiful at his Arrival, that his Fame spread all over *Kongo*, and many Mulattos and Negros came voluntarily to serve him. After six Months Stay at the City (of *St. Paul*) he marched to the *Ouataba* of *Tambi*, where he shipped his Troops in Pinnaces, and went-up the River *Kongo*, or *Gouanza*; landing at the *Ouataba* of *Senge*, sixty Miles from the Sea, which Territory lies next to the *Demba*, and abounds with Mines of Salt.

HERE the Governor staid ten Days, and sent a Pinnace to *Massangans* for the best Soldiers there: So the Captain of that Garrison sent *Battel* down with an hundred Soldiers to the Governor, who used him well, and made him Sergeant of a *Portuguese* Company. The Governor then marched to *Machimba*, from thence to *Kovu*, and then to *Melanbe*, a great Lord; with whom staying four Days, many neighbouring Lords came-in and submitted. Thence they marched against a considerable Lord called *Angry-kayanga*, who opposed them with sixty thousand Men, but was defeated with great Slaughter: After which, they took his Women and Children Prisoners, and possessed themselves of his chief Town, because it was a pleasant Place, abounding with Cattle and Provisions. Here, after eight Days Stay, *Continho*, the Governor, died, leaving the Care of the Expedition to a Captain.

AFTER two Months Stay in the Country of *Angry-kayanga*, they marched towards *Kambambe*, which was three Days Journey, and came right against the *Serras de Prata*. Here they passed the River *Gouanza*, and over-ran the Country, building a Fort by the River-Side. Here *Battel* served two Years. The *Portuguese* opened the Silver Mines, but forbore working them, as they produced little Silver. The new Governor was very cruel to his Soldiers; so that all his Volunteers left him, which put a Stop to the Expedi-

tion.

HERE the Governor staid ten Days, and sent a Pinnace to *Massangans* for the best Soldiers there: So the Captain of that Garrison sent *Battel* down with an hundred Soldiers to the Governor, who used him well, and made him Sergeant of a *Portuguese* Company. The Governor then marched to *Machimba*, from thence to *Kovu*, and then to *Melanbe*, a great Lord; with whom staying four Days, many neighbouring Lords came-in and submitted. Thence they marched against a considerable Lord called *Angry-kayanga*, who opposed them with sixty thousand Men, but was defeated with great Slaughter: After which, they took his Women and Children Prisoners, and possessed themselves of his chief Town, because it was a pleasant Place, abounding with Cattle and Provisions. Here, after eight Days Stay, *Continho*, the Governor, died, leaving the Care of the Expedition to a Captain.

AFTER two Months Stay in the Country of *Angry-kayanga*, they marched towards *Kambambe*, which was three Days Journey, and came right against the *Serras de Prata*. Here they passed the River *Gouanza*, and over-ran the Country, building a Fort by the River-Side. Here *Battel* served two Years. The *Portuguese* opened the Silver Mines, but forbore working them, as they produced little Silver. The new Governor was very cruel to his Soldiers; so that all his Volunteers left him, which put a Stop to the Expedi-

tion.

* Here he seems to speak as an Eye-Witness, but not positively.

† Purchas's Pilgrims, vol. 2. p. 975.

* This is *Battel's* Explanation for the Bird of the *Makese*.

† The same, p. 970.

1580.

Battel.

tion. At this Time came News by the Jesuits, that Queen *Elizabeth* was dead*, and that King *James* had made Peace with *Spain*: On this, *Battel* having petitioned the Governor for Leave to return to *England*, obtained it, and followed him to the City of *St. Paul*.

THE Governor left five hundred Soldiers in the Fort of *Kambambe*. *Battel* travelled with a Portuguese Merchant to the Province of *Bamba*, and from thence to the *Outgiro*, or City standing on the Mountain of *Kengo*; from thence to *Gengen* and *Batta*, where they sold their Goods, and in six Months returned to *St. Paul*. *Battel* then designed to have shipped himself for *Spain*; but the Governor retracted his Permission, ordering him to prepare in two Days to go-up to the Conquest again. This Governor's Term of three Years was just expired, and the Inhabitants daily expected a new one from *Portugal*: So *Battel* determined to absent himself ten or twenty Days from the City, till the new Governor comes: it being a Custom for the new Governor to issue a general Pardon for all Fugitives.

Battel does
just again.

THE same Night, *Battel* left the City with two Negro Boys: He had one who carried his Musket, six Pounds of Powder, and an hundred Bullets, with the little Provision he could make. By next Morning, he was about twenty Miles from the City, along the River *Bengo*, where he staid for some Days, and then crossing the River, came to that of *Danda*, which is to the North. Here he hoped to hear some News from the City, being near the Highway from thence to *Kengo*. One of his Negroes, whom he sent on the Enquiry, brought him Word, that the new Governor would not come that Year. This put him to his Shifts, having no Choice but to return to the City and be hanged, or to stay and live in the Woods; for this was the third Time of his deserting. Thus he continued in the Woods a Month, between the Rivers *Danda* and *Bengo*. After this, he returned to *Bengo* again, to *Mouji Kafusa*; and crossing the River, travelled to the Lake of *Kasansa*, where is the greatest Store of wild Beasts of any Place in *Angola*†.

Lives in the
Woods.

HERE *Battel* continued six Months, living on dried Flesh, as Buffalos, Deer, Mokokes, Impolances, and Roebucks, which he killed with his Gun. He dried the Flesh, as the Savages do, on a Hurdle raised three Foot from the Ground; making a great Fire underneath, and laying the Flesh on green Boughs, which keep down the Smoke and Heat. He made his Fire with two Sticks, and sometimes his Boy got Guinea-Wheat

from the Natives, in exchange for dried Flesh. The Lake of *Kasansa* also abounds with Fish of various Kinds. *Battel* has taken one, that leaped out of the Water ashore, four Foot long, which the Natives called *Bombo*. After living six Months on dried Flesh and Fish, he grew weary; and seeing no End of his Misery, wrought Means to get away.

Voyage to
Angola.

IN the Lake of *Kasansa* are many little Islands, full of Trees, called *Memba*. The Wood is as light as Cork, and as soft. Of these Trees he built a *Jergada*‡, (with a Knife he had of the Savages) in the Shape of a Boat; fastening it with wooden Pegs, and railing it round to prevent the Sea working him out. He made a Sail of a Blanket he had, and three Oars to row. The Lake of *Kasansa* is eight Miles broad, and falls into the River of *Bengo*. *Battel* entering his *Jergada*, with his two Negro Boys, got into the River, and fell-down with the Current, twelve Leagues, to the Bar. Here he was in great Danger, the Sea running high. Having gotten over the Bar, he rowed out to Sea, sailing before the Wind along the Coast, which he was well acquainted with, intending to go to the Kingdom of *Longo*, which lies to the North. The next Morning, he saw a Pinnace coming-down before the Wind, which happened to be bound from the City (off *St. Paul*) to *St. Thomas*; and the Vessel drawing near him, he found the Master an old Friend of his, having been Mates together. For *Pity's* Sake, he took *Battel* in, and set him ashore in the Port of *Longo*§, where he staid three Years; being in great Favour with the King, because he killed him Deer and wild Fowl with his Gun.

THE Portuguese Manner of making War in this Country is thus: They chuse some Noble-^{Man} of *Kengo*, who is a Christian, and of good Character: He brings with him about an hundred Negro Followers. This *Mafitongo* is made by them, *Tandala*, or General of the Black Camp, and has full Authority given him to rule the Negroes. When any Negro Chief comes to make his Submission, he first brings his Present to the *Tandala*, of Slaves, Cattle, and Goats. The *Tandala* then introduces him to the Portuguese Governor, to whose Page he must give two Slaves before he is admitted: He must likewise have a large Gift for the Governor, as thirty or forty Slaves, besides Cattle. When the strange Lord appears before the Governor, he claps his Hands, kneeling, and prostrates himself; and then rising says, *I have been an Enemy, and now I protest to be true, and never more lift my Hands*

* In the Year 1602.

† *Purchas's Pilgrimage*, vol. 2, p. 978.‡ Before, and afterwards, *Ginganda*.

§ Why did not he carry him home?

¶ This seems to be *Longo*, rather than *Longo*, a Place to the North of it.‡ *Purchas*, as before, p. 979.

1666. *Angelo.* against you. The Governor then calls a Soldier, a him, and he is to provide for and maintain his Guest. If he goes to War, the Soldier attends him, and has half the Booty: Thus there is no Portuguese Soldier but what has his Negro *Seau*, or Lord ^a.

C H A P. II.

A VOYAGE to Kongo, in 1666 and 1667.

By Michael Angelo of Gattina, and Denis de Carli of Piacenza ^b, Capuchin Missionaries.

Translated from the Italian.

Introduction. WHO the Authors of this Voyage were, and the End of their going to Kongo, is expressed sufficiently in the Title. *Angelo* died in that Country, after he had sent over several Letters to Italy, from whence the Part which we have given under his Name was extracted, as it should seem by *Carli*; who returned home, and having penned his Share of the little Work, which begins where *Angelo* left off, published the Whole in Italian. From thence it was first done into French, and printed at Lyons in 1680 ^c; then into English, in 1704 ^d. The Relation seems to be faithful, so far, at least, as relates to the Country and People, where Matters of Religion have nothing to do.

SECT. I.

The VOYAGE to Kongo;

Written by Michael Angelo.

Missioners Privileges. Sail for Brazil. Sports at Sea. Cross the Line. Great Distress of a Portuguese Ship. Cape St. Augustin. Port of Fernambuco: Feast of the Rosary kept there. The Sugar-Works. They sail for Kongo. Strange Fish. Coast of Africa. Benguela Port: Malignant Air. Come to Loanda. Prepare for their Mission.

MICHAEL ANGELO and Denis Carli, were, with fourteen other Capuchins, dispatched by the Cardinals *de propaganda Fide*, in 1666, for the Mission of Kongo. Their Patents contained the following Privileges: To dispense

with any Irregularity, except incurred by Bigamy, or wilful Murder: To dispense with and commute all simple Vows, even of Chastity, excepting that of Religion: To dispense with Marriages within the second and third Degrees; and allow Pagan Converts to keep one of their Wives: To absolve in Cases reserved to the Pope: To bless Church-Stuff, Churches and Chalice: To give Leave to eat Flesh and white Meats; and to say two Masses a Day in Case of Necessity: To grant plenary Indulgences: To deliver a Soul out of Purgatory, according to the Intention of the Priest, in a Mass for the Dead on Monday and Tuesday: To wear secular Cloaths in Case of Necessity: To say the Rosary, for want of a Breviary, or any other Impediment: To read forbidden Books, except *Ma-chiavel*.

As soon as these Letters Patent were delivered to him, he set-out from Bononia, his native Country, where he then resided, to Piacenza, where he received Orders to wait for Michael Angelo of Rheggio: He being come, they went together to Genoa, where all the Missioners were to embark. Thence they sailed for Lisbon, and having resided there some Months, took the Opportunity of a Portuguese Vessel, bound for Brazil, in order to load there, and then sail-over to the Coast of Kongo in Africa. They spent three Months in their Passage to Brazil, and had often, by the Way, the Satisfaction to see the Flying-Fishes followed by the *Dorado*, or *Deri*. The first is a very white Fish, about a Foot long, not unlike a Herring, save that its Back is of an azure Colour, and its Fins larger, and fitter to serve instead of Wings.

^a Perche's Pilgrims, vol. 2. p. 684.

^b Or, Placentia, in Italy.

^c In Olavo, under the

Title of *Relation Curieuse et Nouvelle d'un Voyage de Congo, fait en l'Année 1666 et 1667. Par les R.R. P.P.*

^d Coll. of Voy. Folio, vol. 1. p. 553.

1666.

Angelo.

DRAWING near the Coast of *Guinea*, they began to feel much Heat from the Sun, which is there in the Zenith; and as they advanced, grew so violent, that in a few Days they could neither eat nor sleep for Weakness. To add to their Sufferings, the Provisions and Drink were full of Maggots. This lasted for fifteen Days, while they sailed under the Line; so that it was a Sort of Miracle they did not all die, though it was then the Month of *August*, the most temperate Time of the Year in those Parts.

Spent at Sea.

THE *Portuguese* use generally to make some Rejoicing, and keep Holiday, to beg of God a good Issue of that dangerous Voyage. Those also who have never been under the Line, are obliged to give the Sailors either a Piece of Money, or something to eat or drink, or at least Money's Worth; the very *Capuchins* are not excused, of whom they take Beads, *Agnus Dei's*, or the like. These are exposed to Sale, and what they yield is given to say Masses for the Souls in Purgatory. If any refuse paying this Duty, the Sailors, clothed like Officers, carry him bound to a Tribunal; where a Seaman in a long Robe, acting the Part of a Judge, examines him, hears what he has to say, and gives Judgment against him to be thrice ducked in the Sea, after this Manner: The Person condemned is tied fast with a Rope, and the other End of it runs through a Pulley at the Yard-Arm, by which he is hoisted up, and then let run again three Times under Water; and there seldom fails to be one or other who gives the rest this Diversion. The same is practised in the Straits of *Gibraltar*, and at the Cape of *Good Hope*.

Cross the Line.

HAVING passed the Line, the Wind still continued right a-Bern, but so very violent, that if they had not met with a Current rapid enough to stem their furious Course, they must have perished. Sometime after, the Wind calming, they lost that Refreshment, and began to fear their Provisions would fall short. Their Dread was increased by the Remembrance of the Disaster which lately befel the Ship *Catari-netta*.

Cross the Equator.

THIS Vessel, which was from *Goa*, laden with Commodities of great Value, arrived safe in *Brazil*; But passing the Line, in its Way to *Lisbon*, the Master, and all the best Sailors, died with the intense Heats. The Ship, thus left to the Mercy of the Waves, drove about for seven Months, which forced such as were left alive, after consuming all their Provisions, to eat the Cats, Dogs, and Rats they found on board, and to dress their Shoes and any other Leather. At last, only five remained out of four hundred

Men. One of these was the Captain, who was no less distracted with the dismal Prospect of a miserable Death, than the Thoughts of losing his Reputation: He fancied Fame would report, that he was fled into some far Country, to make his Advantage of the great Treasure he was intrusted with, and enjoy the Fruits of his Dishonesty out of Danger: Being therefore desirous, that at least some one of them might survive to carry home the News of their Misfortune, he proposed casting Lots, to see which of them should be killed to serve for Food to the other four, since absolute Necessity made that Course just and reasonable.

Voyage to Kongo.

THEY all agreed to the Proposal, but would needs exempt the Captain from the Rigour of it. He solemnly swore, that he would take his Chance with the rest, and having cast Dice, the Lot fell upon him: But still the others refrained from killing him, concluding it was better to die like good Catholics, than imbrue their Hands in the Blood of their Companion. Accordingly, resolving all to wait the Event, one of them went up to the Top-Mast-Head; from whence, looking-out sharp, he at last espied, at a great Distance, something dark, and the Captain going-up with a Perspective-Glass, perceived that it was Land. They steered that Way the best they could, and coming-up with the Shore, found it was a Port then in Peace with *Portugal*. Being landed, they went immediately to the Governor, who entertained and furnished them with all they stood in Need of: Yet two of them, more spent than the rest, died: The other three, with the Help of the good Medicines, recovered, and having refitted their Vessel, set-sail again for *Lisbon*; where, as soon as they arrived, one of the three, who relapsed by the Way, died also. The Captain and Sailor, who survived, landed, and were immediately introduced to the King of *Portugal*; who, moved at their Sufferings, gave them Gifts of Value, making the Captain Admiral of the Fleet, and the Sailor Captain of the best Ship. To return to the Voyage.

BEING in ten Degrees of South Latitude, they discovered *Cape St. Augustin*, and saw Abundance of Land-Fowls flying about them, with Whales spouting Streams of Water. There are such Numbers of them in this Sea, that the Author assures us, a Merchant pays to the King of *Portugal*, fifty thousand Crowns in Gold for the Patent to make Oil.

PASSING by our *Lady of Nazareth*, a Church five Miles short of *Fernambuco*, they all saluted her with three *Aus Maria's*, and a tripple Discharge of their Cannon. They came to

* *Angelo's Voyage*, p. 555.
Occasion of founding this Church.

* The same, p. 556.

* The Author here relates the fabulous

1667.

Ancho.

Port of Fernambuco.

Anchor under the Tower, which serves as a Port to the Harbour of *Fernambuco*, the Port being too little for Ships to ride in^a.

AT the Place of their Reception they found two of their Companions sick of a Fever: The Author likewise and *Angelo* felt some Indisposition, which obliged them to go into the Doctor's Hands; it being almost inevitable for those who come into that Country to fall sick, whether it proceeds from the Change of Air or Food.

THERE were then, within and without the Port, eighty Ships, including their own, which was loading with Sugar, of which she carried no fewer than one thousand Chefts.

Fish of the Bay.

DURING their Stay at *Fernambuco*, a great Feast of the Rosary was kept in the great Church, called *Corpo Santo*, or, *The Holy Body*. The Order of it was very magnificent. The Church was hung with ten thousand Ells of Silk, of a Fire Colour, and other rich Stuffs: The Tabernacle, which was lofty, covered with Silk, embroidered full of Flames of Gold, and a Silver Galloon over it which dazzled the Eyes; the Music of Harps, Violins, and Cornets, accompanying the Hymns. The Religious are not at this great Expence, but chuse the richest Merchant in the City, who looks upon it as a Point of Honour to open his Purse freely upon such an Occasion. He who bore the Charge that Year, protested to the Missioners, the next Day, that he had spent four thousand Ducats in Bonfires the Night before. To explain this, the Reader must know, that a Ship, belonging to him, being found unfit for the Sea, was unloaded, and all the Rigging and Iron-Work being taken-out, the Timber was burnt; which, he said, cost him four thousand Ducats, that being the prime Value of the Ship^b.

Sugar-Works.

To divert themselves, they went one Day to see Sugar-Works, which is a great Curiosity. The Engine they use is a great Wheel, whirled violently about by a Number of Blacks: This turns a Press of massy Iron, in which the Sugar-Canes are cut in Pieces or bruised, the Moisture that runs from them falling into a great Caldron over the Fire. It is wonderful to see the Blacks, who are naturally lazy, labour so hard, and clap the Canes so dextrously under that Mass of Iron, without leaving their Hands, or Arms, behind them^c.

They sail for Kongo.

THE second of November, 1667, they set-sail for *Kongo*, and were forced, to avoid contrary Winds, to run into twenty-nine Degrees of South Latitude, even with the Cape of Good Hope, which might better be called the Cape of Death, because of the continual Fear of Death

they are in who come near it. For the Space of eight Days, they were tossed in a terrible Manner; sometimes lifted-up to the Clouds, and sometimes cast-down to the Deep, either Way dreading to perish. At last, the Wind fell, the Waves settled, and they saw some Bones of Cuttle-Fish, which the Goldsmiths make use of for Casting, float upon the Water. This is esteemed a Token of fair Weather, and of being within sixty Leagues of the Continent; that Fish never going far from Shore.

IN short, next Day, they saw Land, and began to hope well of the Success of their Voyage; because there are never any Storms on that Coast, and Ships may run along within Market-shot of it, without any Danger of Sands. Their Boat being out for several Days, founding to discover some Rocks that lie under Water along the Shore, they fished as they went, and always brought aboard a great deal of Fish. Among the rest, they caught one that weighed about fifteen or sixteen Pound, which the Captain said he would treat them with. The Colour of it was red, the Head large and round, the Eyes sparkling like Fire, the Nostrils flat upon the Forehead, the Fins beating, the Scales rustling together, the whole Body tossing and puffing in a hideous Manner. The Captain, knowing it to be one of the most delicious Fishes in those Seas, would needs dress it for them himself, making a Sort of white Sauce with Sugar, Spice, and the Juice of Oranges and Lemons: So that it being all like a Dish of Curds, they eat it with Spoons, and could not distinguish whether the Sauce made the Fish good, or the Fish mended the Sauce.

THE Author had a Mind to go ashore; but *Angelo* of the Master would not suffer it, assuring him there were Blacks along that Coast who eat Man's Flesh. They discovered two of them, who, as soon as they saw the Whites, ran away; which made the Master put-off from Shore, for fear those Blacks were gone to call some Magician to sink their Boat and seize the Men. Some Days after, the Master went ashore to ease himself behind a little Rock; but as soon as he got there, he ran back again to the Water out of Breath, calling-out to the rest to come to his Assistance, as they did. The Cause of his Fright was, that behind the Rock he saw a Fire lighted, near to which there was a String of Fishes a-drying, a certain Token that some Blacks lived near; which so terrified him, that forgetting the Need he was in, he had no Motion that Way for three Days after.

WHEN they had passed that Coast, which is hideous to look on, by reason of a long Ridge of barren Mountains, about the Latitude of four-

^a *Angelo's Voyage*, p. 557.

^b The same, p. 553.

^c The same, p. 559.

1667.
Angola.Benguela
Port.

teen Degrees, they discovered some green Trees and a pleasanter Shore, with good Ports, capable of containing two or three thousand Ships. Upon Christmas-Eve, they put into that of *Benguela**, Capital of the Kingdom of that Name.

ABUNDANCE of small Boats, each carrying two black Fishermen, came on board them to exchange Fish with the Seamen for Brazil-Roll-Tobacco.

THE Author went ashore here with the Superior, and preached in *Portuguese*. The Air of this Place gives the Food of the Country so pernicious a Quality, that those who eat of it at their first Coming certainly die, or at least contract some dangerous Distemper. For this Reason, Passengers take Care not to go ashore, or drink the Water, which looks like Lye. This made the Missioners unwilling to accept of the Dinner the Governor invited them to, till he had assured them, that he would not give them either the Provision or Wine of the Country. c He treated them after the *Portuguese* Fashion, and sent them very good *European* Fruit aboard, with a whole Beef head, but little, and without Horns. It was very well-tasted, and is all the Meat of the Country, whereof there is great Plenty. However, the frightful Figure the Whites made, caused *Carli* to refuse the Governor's Request, who wanting Priests would have kept him there for some Time. The Courts at *Lisbon*, as a Punishment for heinous Crimes, often banish d Offenders to *Angola* and *Benguela*, looking upon those Countries as the most wretched and infectious of any the *Portuguese* possess: Hence the Whites there are the most deceitful and wicked of Men^b.

Come to
Luanda.

HAVING taken Leave of the Governor, they proceeded on their Voyage, which they finished happily, arriving on *Twelfth-Day* at the Port of *Luanda*, which is the finest and largest the Author ever yet saw. His Companion, *Carli*, and he landing, were received by an infinite Number of Whites and Blacks, who expressed their Joy for their Arrival, kissing their Habits and embracing them. Attended by this Crowd, they proceeded to their Hospitium, or House for their Reception, in the Church whereof they found above three hundred Persons, with the chief Men of the Town, who came out to meet them. From thence they went into a Convent, where they found three *Padres*; an old Layman three-score and ten Years of Age; an under Guardian of *Kongo*, recovering after a Fit of Sickness, and one of *Angola* in a Fever. They were informed, that two Religious of their Company, who came

away a little before them from *Genoa*, died as soon as they arrived, one at *Luanda*, and the other at *Massangrana*, not far off.

Voyage to
Kongo.

Not long after, the Sub-Guardian intended to set-out and conduct *Angelo* and his Companion to the Country of *Songo*, and thence to the Country of *Bamba*.

THE Inhabitants of *Luanda* courted them to stay with them for a Year, at least, to use themselves to the Air and Provisions, before they ventured farther into those Deserts and unhealthy Countries of *Bamba*, where their Lives would be in Danger: But they would not be diverted from expelling themselves to all the Perils and Fatigues for which they had been prepared. Here the Relation, extracted from the Letters of *Michael Angelo*, ends.

S E C T. II.

TRAVELS of the Missioners in Kongo.

Written by Denis Carli.

Come to Dante. Way of Travelling. The Makolonte. Natives, how employed. Way of baptizing: Say Mass for the first Time. Several strange Beasts. Danger from Lions. Cooking on the Road: Frighted by an Elephant. monstrous Serpent. A Grande of Kongo: His numerous Retinue. Danger from wild Beasts. Meet a Portuguese Priest. Bombi, great Town. Carli's Craft to get Food. Meet a wounded Lion: Account of the Combat. A young Woman baptized. Fatiguing Road. Cross a deep River. Arrive at Bamba.

HAVING provided all Things necessary, the two *Capuchins* embarked, and coasting the Shore, in two Days came to Dante*, on the Frontiers of the Kingdom of *Angola*, where the *Portuguese* have a Fort. They went to wait upon the Governor, and shewed him their Letters from the Lords of the Council at *Luanda*, who then governed the Kingdom, the Vice-Roy that was expected not being yet come: They were Letters of Recommendation for him to help them to Blacks to carry them and their Goods. During two Days they staid there, the Governor sent out a-fishing, and salted the Fish for them, amongst which were Soles and Pilchards above a Span long. Besides their Provisions and thirty Blacks, Hammocks were provided for them; the Gentlemen of that City assuring them, that it was im-

Come to
Dante.

* Or, *San Felipe de Benguela*.
same, p. 561; *Id.* seq.

^b *Angelo's Voyage*, p. 560.
* Or, *Dande*.

* Rather, *Massangana*.

* The

possible

1667.

Carli.

possible for them to go a-Foot, being clad and equipped as they were: So that there being no other Remedy, says the Author, we complied with the Custom of the Country.

Way of Travelling.

THERE being no great Roads in those wild Countries, but only Paths, they were forced to go in File. Some Blacks went before with their Burdens; next *Angela*, in his Hammock, followed by some Blacks; then came *Carli*, carried in his Net, which he found an easy Sort of Voiture. He was followed by the rest of the Blacks, whose Office was to relieve the others when they were weary. It is wonderful to see how swift they go, though loaded. They were armed with Bows and Arrows, and were to carry them to one of their Towns, or *Libattes*, as they call them, where other Carriers were to be provided.

The Makolante.

THE Lord, or Governor of the *Libatte*, whom, in their Language, they call the *Makolante*, came immediately to visit them, and assigned them two of the best Cottages in the Place; for throughout all the Kingdom, excepting in *St. Salvador*, there is never a Stone House, but only Straw and Stubble. The finest are built with Mud Walls, and thatched; most of them without Windows, the Door serving in their Stead.

THE *Makolante* wore a Clout of the Signets of a Handkerchief, made of Palm-Tree Leaves, for Modesty's Sake, to cover his Nakedness; and a Cloak of European Cloth, reaching to the Ground: It was blue, a Colour much esteemed amongst them. The rest of his Body was naked. The Blacks attending him, who were his Officers, had on only one of those Handkerchiefs, which they send to be dyed blue at *Launda*. The rest of the People had nothing but Leaves of Trees, and Monkey's Skins to cover them; and those who live in the open Country, and lie under the Trees, whether Men or Women, go quite naked.

Natives, here employed.

THIS first *Libatte* was pretty large, consisting of about an hundred Cottages, separate from one another, and without any Order. It may be said, they do not live in them in the Day-Time; for the Men, being quite Strangers to Melancholy, go a-walking to divert themselves, to converse together, and play on certain wretched Instruments, till Night. The Women, on the other Side, go-out in the Morning to till the Ground, carrying a Basket at their Backs, into which they put a black, earthen Pot, which they call *Kinso-fwa*, and one of their Children; bearing the youngest in their Arms, who takes the Breast without the Mother's Help: They lead a third

a by the Hand, and often carry another in their Belly, being very prolific. The rest of the Children, if there be more, follow the Mother; but when somewhat big, they let them go where they will, without taking any more Care of them, than if they were not their own.

THE Missioners presented the *Makolante* with a String of *Fenice-Glats*, which they call *Mif-fanga*, and hang about their Neck, for want of a Place to keep it in. The *Makolante*, having received and returned his Compliments, sent a Black all about the *Libatte*, to order the Inhabitants to bring their Children to be baptized; but the Youth were almost all baptized before, the *Capuchins* having had that Mission thirty Years. On this Occasion, the Black acquaints them, that a *Capuchin* is come, whom, in their Language, they call *Grango*, adding, by Way of Respect, the Word *Famet*, that is, *Father*, or *Master*. Upon this Advice, they all flock-in, bringing their Children, and, by Way of Alms, two of their Palm-Tree-Leaf Handkerchiefs; or else three thousand five hundred little Shells, called *Zimbi*, which is the Money of the Country; or else a Puller: For a Quantity of Fowl was once carried thither, but the Wars have almost destroyed them. They also bring a little Salt upon a Leaf to bless the Water, and give one of the Presents above-mentioned for baptizing their Children; though, if they have nothing to give, they are christened *gratis*. In this *Libatte* each of them baptized fifteen.

CARLI having spoken to the *Makolante* to prepare Things for saying Mass, next Day, he immediately sent-out Blacks to cut Wood and Palm-Tree Leaves, wherewith they erected a little green Chapel and Altar, according to his Directions. They then furnished it out of a Chest of Utensils, which all the Missioners carried along with them. There was a great Number of People present, the Chapel having been erected on a rising Ground, that they might see, if they could not hear the Mass. Next they catechized, dividing the People into two Parts, and explaining what they said by an Interpreter. Which done, the Blacks fell a playing upon several Instruments, dancing and shouting so loud, that they might be heard half a League off.

THE Missioners preparing to be gone, the *Makolante* made a Sign for his Blacks to stand still and be silent, which was done in a Moment, and they had Need enough of it, being all in a Sweat. Having given them their Blessing, the *Capuchins* set-out; after which, the People began afresh to play, dance, and hallo, as loud as before.

* Carli's Voyage, p. 562.

* In the Original, *Quinso-fwa*.

* Carli, as before, p. 563.

1667.

Carli.

Several
pieces
Kings.

By the Way, they saw several Sorts of Creatures; particularly, little Monkeys, and Abundance of Apes, of divers Colours, who all fled to the Tops of the highest Trees. They discovered two *Pataffes*, Beasts somewhat resembling Buffalos, that roar like Lions. The *Zebra* is also found in these Parts. They saw another Animal, with black and yellow Hair, far-off upon a Mountain, which the Interpreter said was a Leopard. They came unawares upon a Beast that lay asleep, and was waked by the Shouting of the Blacks as they travelled. It rose, took a great Leap and fled. The Body resembled that of a Wolf, whereof there are Abundance, but its Head was like a Bullock, disproportionable and frightful to behold: They said it was some Monster. There were Abundance of Beasts like Goats, which ran away, and then staid for one another: Also a Multitude of wild Hens, bigger than the tame, which taste like a Hare.

Drops from
Lions.

NOTHING extraordinary happened at the second *Libatte*, where they acted as at the first. One Night, coming to one of those *Libattes*, they shut the Gate, which was made of dried Thorns; all the Inclosure, like the Walls of their Towns, being Hedges of Thorn as high as a Pike. Cottages were assigned to pass the Night, but the Heat being excessive, the Missioners chose rather to lie in the open Air in their Hamocks; fastening one End to the Top of the Cottage, and the other to two Poles set-up across. About Midnight came three Lions roaring, that they made the Earth shake. This waked *Carli* thoroughly, who lifted his Head to look-out, it being Moon-light: But the Hedge was so close and full of Leaves, that he could perceive none of them, though he was sensible they were not far from it. He was almost resolved to go back into the Cottage, but thinking it impossible they should leap such high Hedges, he lay quiet till Day, not without panting for Fear now and then. Day being come, he went to *Michael Angelo*, lodged in a Cottage hard-by; who, it seems, never slept better, because the Night was fresh, and had heard nothing of the Lions. *Carli* told him, it was happy for him, for that if they had broken-in, he must have gone to Heaven without knowing which Way.

Cooking on
the Road.

AFTER baptizing several Children, they set-out, and having travelled till Noon, the Blacks gave them Notice to stop, there being a little River of good Water hard-by. Getting into the Shade under some Trees, there to make ready Dinner, some of their Men went to gather Buck-Wheat, others to bring Wood. *Angels* would have made use of his Steel to strike a Light; but a Black, who was Cook, said, there was no Need

of that; and taking two Pieces of Wood, one about two Fingers thick, with many Holes in it, which did not go quite through, the other, a little Stick about the Thickness of one's Finger, put the latter into one of the Holes in the first: Then turning and rubbing one against the other briskly with both Hands, the little Stick took Fire; and this is their Way of kindling one. These Men, who came loaded with Buck-Wheat, shook it out of the Ear, and put it into four Pots to make Broth, and boiled Batates^a, which are tolerable good Roots^b.

Frighten
Kings.

WHILST every one was busy about the Cookery, on a sudden they discovered an Elephant, not much less than a Cart laden with Hay in *Lembardy*, his Head hanging a little, one of his Teeth being already dropped: All the Blacks getting-up hastily, began to let-fly Arrows at him with their usual Cries; but one of them, more cunning than the rest, ran and set Fire to a neighbouring thatched Cottage. The Flame soon put the Elephant to flight with three Arrows sticking in his Body: But the Fire of the Cottage spreading by the Wind, laid hold of the next Herbage, which being dried-up with the excessive Heat, and very high, burnt for above a League, consuming the Grass, Trees, and all it met with. The Beasts therabouts being by this Means frightened away, they continued their Journey to the next *Libatte* in all Manner of Safety.

ANOTHER Day they met a great Serpent upon the Road, with a Head as big as a Calf's, twenty-five Foot long; for of that Length was the Skin of such another, which the Author measured. It was presented to *Michael Angelo*, who sent it with some other Curiosities to his Father. At Sight of this frightful Creature, the Blacks according to Custom gave a great Shout, and striking-out of the Way, made the Missioners go-up a rising Ground to give it Time either to go-back, or move-forwards. *Carli* observed, that in advancing it made as much Herbage shake, as if there had been twenty People. They waited above an Hour for it to pass, and then proceeded. They perceived by this, that the Blacks were more fearful than themselves; and that they were to expect no farther Assistance from them than what their Heels could afford. They often wished they had brought a Gun with them, which would have been very useful; all their Remedy, when in Danger from wild Beasts, being either to fly, or fire the Herbage to secure themselves.

ONE Day coming near a River, where they were told there were only two thatched Houses to entertain and lodge the Blacks that go from *Leanda* to *St. Salvador*, they discovered a Number of Cottages, and heard a great Noise of

^a It is our Towns in the Translation.^b Or, Potatoes.^c *Carli*, as before, p. 564.

1667.

Carl.

People founding Trumpets, and playing on Drums, Fifes, and other Instruments. The Blacks thought it might be the great Duke, Lord of the Province: But coming-up, they perceived they were all new Cottages encompassed with a thick Hedge of Thorns to secure them against the wild Beasts that come to drink at the Rivers. Here they found the Brother of the Captain-Major of *Dante*, a Black, who sent four *Mulattos* with Muskets to meet them, accompanied by many Blacks with Fifes and Trumpets. That Gentleman received them very courteously, and told them, that every Evening, when Night came-on, he caused such a Village to be built. He treated them with Pullets and Fruits of the Country. There were with him above one thousand eight hundred Men, besides Women and Children; which was the Reason they had been forced to stay two Days at *Dante*, where they found not Men enough to accompany them. He waited to see them carried over the River. Among his Retinue he had twenty-four *Mulattos*, who are bold, daring, and undaunted Fellows; they were armed with Muskets and Simitars; the Blacks had Bows and Half-Pikes: The Instruments founded, and the Cries were redoubled at his Departure; which made the Missioners admire to see with what State and Attendance great Men travel in those Parts.

HALF a Mile from the River, they came to the two Cottages before-mentioned, where there were no thorny Hedges, only four Trees, with little Huts on the Tops of them. Here the Blacks said some of them would watch all Night, if the Missioners would go into one of the Cottages, and that the rest would lodge in the other. They went into the best Cottage, and lay to sleep on Straw, after eating what the black Gentleman had charitably bestowed upon them.

ABOUT Midnight they were disturbed by a Lion and She-Tyger that came sporting towards their Huts. Having, upon this Occasion, heard one another's Confession, they looked through the Crevices of the Cottage, and could perceive them not a Stone's Throw off. Their Hearts ached sorely, but the Blacks, after talking together a little, lighted a Fire, which made those Beasts fly towards the River.

NEXT Day they overtook several Blacks, who were carrying a *Portuguese* to be a Canon of the Cathedral of *St. Salvador*. They were pleased at this Accident, having seen one another at *Leanda*,

a where he came every Day to say Mass in their Church, and travelled together the remaining Part of the Day. They asked him how he could leave so fine a City as *Lisbon*, to come into those wretched and desert Countries? He answered, that he had a good Pension allowed him of fifty *Millie Reys* a Year, which is about seventeen Pounds *Sterling*. *Carl* told him, he would not undertake such a Task for a thousand Millions of Gold. What do you come to do here then? quoth the Canon. The Missioners replied, that it was for the Love of God and their Neighbour they left *Italy*; and that they should think all their Care and Fatigues sufficiently rewarded, if but one Soul purchased Heaven through their Means. When they came to the *Libette*, where there not being Blacks enough to carry them all, they desired the Canon to go before, proposing to stay till his Porters came back, but could not prevail on him. He died a few Days after at *Bombi*, c from whence they were gone before he arrived.

BOMBI is a very great *Libette*, where re-*Bombi great* fides a Marquis, subject to the great Duke of *Bamba*, as he is to the King of *Kongo*. One of his Sons, who was twenty-five Years old, and spoke good *Portuguese*, having offered to go with them to be their Interpreter during their Stay at *Bamba*, they accepted the Kindness with his Father's Consent. When the Sun was up, they set forward better pleased than before: But when they least thought of it, they perceived at a Distance a great Fire the Blacks had lighted among the Herbage, which running-on before the Wind, drove all the wild Beasts towards them. Their Men telling them, that the best Way to shun the Fury of those Animals, was to climb the Trees, they took a Ladder of Ropes (made in *Brazil*) out of a Trunk, and making a Black get-up a Tree to fasten it, the two Missioners and the Marquis's Son mounted, drawing-up the Ladder after them. The rest ascended other Trees, just Time enough to save themselves: For immediately there came such a Number of wild Beasts, that all the Company would scarce have made one good Meal for them. There were Tygers, Lions, Wolves, Pokafies, Rhinoceroses, and several other Sorts of Creatures, who, as they passed by, lifted-up their Heads, and looked at them. The Blacks wounded some of them with their Arrows, poisoned with the Juice of Herbs.

NEXT Day they came to a *Libette*, most of

* *Carl*, as before, p. 565.

* We see in this the Hypocrisy of the regular Clergy of the Church of *Rome*, as well as their hereditary Rancour against the Seculars. The Author would insinuate the Covetousness of the Canon in coming into so unhealthy a Country for Sake of a trifling Pension: Whereas he pretends he came solely for the Love of Souls. But can any-body believe that those Men would part with Millions to save a Soul, who yet would let it burn for ever in Purgatory rather than say a Mass to release it, without being paid a Shilling for their Labour?

o *Or, Bombi*.

* *Carl*, as before, p. 566.

1667.

Call.

whose Inhabitants were with the Duke of *Bamba* to war against the Count of *Songo*, who had long revolted against the King of *Kongo*. Both Parties having lost some Men, the rest concluded a Truce, but some Time after took-up Arms again, the Duke being made the King's Generalissimo.

Carl's Conf.
to get Food.

THESE being but few Men in that Place, *Michael Angels* resolved to go before to *Bamba*, which was not far off, and sent twenty Men from thence to carry *Carl* and the Luggage. He staid six Days there with the Marquis's Son, both of them living upon Kidney Beans, called, in their Language, *Kazakaza*, which the young Man gathered every Day: But the Author perceiving that Food did not nourish him, and that he could scarce stand upon his Legs through Weakness, he fat him down upon a little Straw at his Cottage Door, and began to string Beads. This the Blacks, who were good old Men, observing, they flocked about him; admiring those Beads with Silk Tassels, to which the Medal was fastened, and earnestly entreated a Pair for the *Makolente*. *Carl* told them he would, provided they would give him a Pullet, having seen a great many about the *Libatte*; which they did. Necessity obliged him to act thus, as there was not a Child in the Place to baptize, and the Natives are little acquainted with giving Arms for God's Sake.

Michael
a wounded
Lion.

At last the Blacks, sent by *Angels*, arrived, and the Author being on his Way, not far from the *Libatte*, where they were to lie that Night, met a Lion so wounded that he could scarce go, and left a Track of Blood whereforever he went. The Blacks in a Fright setting-down their Burdens, laid hold of their Bows, and one of them striking Fire with the two Sticks, described before, put it to the Herbage, which was then (it being March) almost dry, very tall and thick: The Flames rising, and the Blacks continuing their Cries, the Lion, who was coming towards them in a Fury, turned about and took another Way. An Hour before Night they got to the *Libatte*, which had no Enclosure of Thorns like the rest, and went to the Market-Place, where they found all the People gathered about a wounded Man. On asking the Matter, they said it was the *Makolente*, who had fought a Lion. *Carl*, after saluting him, told him he was in the wrong in not making a Thorn Hedge about the *Libatte*, as was about others: *Farther*, said he, as long as I live there will be no Need of a Hedge; when I am dead, they may do as they think fit.

Angels of
the Gondol.

HIS Wound was but slight, and as the Author was curious to hear an Account of the Combat, the *Makolente* told him, that as he was standing

in the same Place with his People, a hungry Lion, led by the Scent of Man's Flesh, came upon them so unexpectedly, without roaring as usual, that his People, who were all disarmed, had scarce Time to make their Escape. "I, continued he, who am not used to run away, clapped one Knee and one Hand to the Ground, and holding up my Knife with the other, struck him with all my Force in the Belly. The Beast finding himself hurt, roared, and came-upon me so furiously, that he wounded himself again in the Throat, but at the same Time, with his Talon, tore a Piece of Skin off my Side. However, my People returning with their Weapons, the Lion ran away swiftly, losing much Blood." This was the Lion which the Author met, certainly in a bad Condition, having been wounded with a Knife, made after the Manner of a *Genesee* Bayonet, guided by the Hand of so brave a Man as the *Makolente*. Here *Angels* was: they brought a handsome, young, black Woman stark naked to *Carl* to be baptized. He caused her to be covered with Leaves, and reproved her for desiring to be baptized so long. Her Excuse was, that she lived in the open Country, as many others do, who lie under Trees; and that she had but then heard of the Coming of the *Gopuchius*. Having instructed her in the Principles of the *Romish* Faith, he baptized and named her *Ann*. This Ceremony over, all the Inhabitants of the *Libatte*, Men, Women, and young Lads, whom they call *Mulecher*, made a Ring and took her in the Midst of them, dancing to their Instruments, and crying, *Long live Anne*, *Long live Anne*, with such a Noise and Hubbub, that the Missioner was quite stunned and confounded. *Farther Michael Angels* having gone before, there were no Children to baptize.

Page 11
Kongo

NEXT Morning he continued his Journey to *Faring* wards *Bamba*, and being forced to alight in a great Valley, because the Way was bad, got-out of the Net, and walked half a League in a stony Way; a very rare Thing in that Country, where till then he had not seen one Stone. The Heat being excessive, and the Path narrow, they all suffered much; besides, the Grass, which was high and thick, beating against his Legs, so staid them, that they were fore for two Months after.

THROUGH the Midst of the Valley there ran a narrow but very deep River. The Blacks founded the Ford where there was the least Water, which was four Foot deep. They lay in their Hammocks, and two of the lustiest Porters carried them, holding the Pole over their Heads, not without Danger of falling together into the Water; but they only laughed at it, and stopped to bathe themselves. They took Notice of A-

Carl's a deep
River.

* Rather, *Sages*.

* *Carl*, as before, p. 567.

1667. *Carli.* bundance of beautiful Birds of several Colours, green, red, yellow; and some, which the Author thought the finest, with white Feathers, and black Fillets, looking like the Scales of Fish, their Tail, Eyes, Beak and Feet of the Colour of Fire. These are *Ethiopian Parrots*, which talk like those of *America*, and are rarely brought into *Europe*, but scarce ever into *Italy*.

Arrive at Bamba.

Being very near *Bamba*, he heard a Bell, which they told him belonged to the *Capuchin* Convent, seated on a Hill. *Michael Angelo* had made it ring to Mass, and having said it, came to meet them, with several Blacks playing on Instruments after their Manner.

SECT. III.

Carli's Travels continued.

Convent at Bamba described. Settled by Angelo. Journey to Pemba. King of Kongo's Person: His State. Presents to the Missionaries. A strange Bird. Peoples Way of living: Their Diet. The great Duke's Sons. Native professors of Penance and Discipline. A Comet. Kolla, or Kola Nut. The Garden improved by Angelo: His Escape from a Tiger. Warriors and Hunters. The Country populous. Great Duke of Bamba: His Dress and State.

Convent at Bamba.

GOING into the Convent, the Author found four little Cells of Mud covered with Straw; the Entry and Porch, Sacristy, or Vestry, and Church, being all built with the same Materials. Whilst here, there came a Black from the great Dutchess to bid him welcome, and let him know she was desirous to see him; but he declined the Visit for the present, on account of being very much weakened and spent with continual Sweating. He found in the Garden, besides the Roots and Plants of *Africa*, all those Kinds which he had before seen in *Brazil*. Those of *Europe* were Grapes, Fennel, Cardoons, or Thistles; all Sorts of Salletting, Gourds, Cucumbers, and many others; but no Pears, Apples, Nuts, or such like Fruit as require a cold Climate. At Night the Dutchess sent him a Bottle of Palm-Tree Wine, which was as white as Milk, but not liking it, they gave it to their Blacks, who looked upon it as a great Dainty, often repeating the Word *Molaj*, which among them signifies Wine.

Settled by Angelo.

The House and Church being old and ruinous, *Michael Angelo* had Thoughts of building new ones. Out of several Blacks he had hired, he appointed two Gardeners; one Cook; one Sa-

crifician; two to go fetch Water to drink and dress their Meat; one to look after the Shell-Money, and to buy Honey, Wax, Fruit, Meal, Buck-Wheat, &c. Their Interpreter continued with them, and they found a great many Blacks who understood *Portuguese*, *Bamba* being in the Road to *St. Salvador*, which those take who carry the *Portuguese* Merchandize from *Launda*.

Portuguese Kongo.

CARLI going to visit the great Dutchess, they agreed together to send a Black to advise the great Duke to make a Truce with the Enemy, and return to his own Estate: But being informed that the King of Kongo was come to *Pemba*, distant ten Days Journey from *Bamba*, *Angelo* and he laid-hold of that Opportunity to go pay him their Respects, with a Resolution to baptize and preach by the Way. They set-out the next Day, with several Blacks allowed them by the great Dutchess, and being to pass over some very desert Mountains full of Lions, set Fire to the Herbage to drive them into the Woods, which succeeded.

Journey to Pemba.

In their little Hospitium, or House of Reception, at *Pemba*, they found *Anthony de Saracore*, a *Capuchin* of the Province of *Tuscany*. They had scarce told him their Design in coming before they heard a great Noise of Trumpets, Flies, Drums, and Cornets. Father *Anthony* saying it was certainly the King passing-by, they went-out and immediately met his Majesty, who was a young Black about twenty Years of Age, clad all over with a scarlet Cloak and Gold Buttons. He usually wore white Buskins upon Silk Stockings, commonly of a Carnation Colour; but they said he had new Cloaths every Day, which *Carli* could hardly believe in a Country where fine Stuffs and good Tailors are scarce. Before him went twenty-four young Blacks, all Sons of Dukes or Marquisses. These wore about the Middle a Handkerchief of Palm-Tree dried black, and a Cloak of blue European Cloth hanging to the Ground, but bare-headed and footed. All his Officers, being about an hundred, were much in the same Dress. After them came a Crowd of other Blacks, with only those black Handkerchiefs.

King of Kongo's Person.

AFTER his Majesty followed his Silk Umbrella of a fine Colour, laced with Gold, and a Chair of Carnation Velvet, with Gold Nails, and the Wood all gilt, each carried by a Black. Two others, clad in red Coats, carried his red Hamock, which was either of Silk, or dyed Cotton; the Staff covered with red Velvet. The Missionaries bowed and saluted his Majesty, whose Name was *D. Alvaro* the Second. He told them they had obliged him in coming into his King-

Carli, as before, p. 568.

The same.

com

1667.

Cath.

don for the Good of his Subjects, but that he should be better pleased if they would go with him to *St. Salvador*. They humbly thanked him, excusing themselves by saying, that there was more Need of them at *Bamba*, since there was not a Priest in all that Province. After this he asked several Questions concerning *Italy* and *Portugal*. Then he ordered his Secretary, who was a *Mulatto*, to give them Letters of Recommendation to the great Duke, that he might assist them upon all Occasions relating either to their Mission or private Concerns.

The Person.

His Majesty dismissed them with several Presents, which they returned in Jewels of Devotion; Things very acceptable to him, who was both religious and affable. His Attendance was numerous, but King *Alphonso* the Third, in 1646, was more richly clad when he gave Audience to some other Missioners of the same Order. He had on his Body a Vest of Cloth of Gold set with precious Stones, and on his Hat a Crown of Diamonds, besides other Stones of great Value. He sat on a Chair under a Canopy of rich Crimson Velvet, with gilt Nails, after the Manner of *Europe*; and under his Feet was a great Carpet, with two Stools of the same Sort of Velvet, laced with Gold.

HAVING taken Leave of Father *Anthony*, they set out upon their Journey back, which they performed easily enough. Every Day they saw all Sorts of Beasts in such Numbers, that one would have thought they had rendezvoused there from all Parts of the Earth. One Time the Author heard the Crying, as it were of a Child, and making the Blacks, who went very fast, stop, bid them go see what it was. They laughing, said it was a great Bird that cried so, and in a Moment after they saw it rise off the Ground. It was bigger than an Eagle, of a dark Yellow. They had certainly starved, coming as well as going, had they not been paid for their ecclesiastical Functions, although the People are very charitable among themselves: For if they gave one of them any thing to eat, he would give a little of it to the next he met, and so all of them eat together; which, says the Author, ought to put many *Europeans* to the Blush, who let the Poor starve rather than give them a Bit of Bread.

Native Way of living.

BEING returned to *Bamba*, Children were brought from all Parts to be baptized and educated, in such Numbers, that they were forced to keep their School in the Church. Some came to be married, but those were only some few of the best and more civilized Sort; for the main Difficulty lies in bringing the Multitude to keep but one Wife. They often said two Masses a Day:

The second usually in another *Libette*, where the *Mahoute* treated them with Kidney Beans, common Beans, and other Things the Women sow in the Country, scarce eating any thing else whilst they are there, and at Work.

Page 11
Kongo.

So they have something to eat, they do not trouble themselves about laying-in great Store of Provisions; scarce minding in the Morning whether they shall have any thing at Night for Supper. The Author observes, that often in travelling, he having nothing to give them, they, without any Concern, would cut a Piece of Wood in Shape of a Mattock, and digging-up the Grass, near the Roots they found certain little round Balls, which they fed-on: This much surprized him, for he could not for his Life get one of them down; and yet after such a wretched Meal, they would skip, dance, and laugh, as if they had been at a Feast: So when they have any thing good to eat, they express no more Satisfaction than when they have the worst.

EVERY Day they baptized eight or ten Children, sometimes fifteen or twenty, the poor People coming many Leagues to them. Hereupon they resolved to divide, one to stay in the Monastery and keep School, the other to go into the Country for a Fortnight, by Turns. *Michael*, *Angelo* by his own Offer went abroad first. Mean Time *Don Peter* and *Don Sebastian*, two Sons of the great Dutchess, never missed coming to the Convent, especially to learn *Portuguese*. Their Genius appeared to be suitable to their Birth, being of a sharp and ready Wit, learning all he taught them, and behaving as became such Princes. Though he was well in Health, yet for want of eating Bread, or drinking Wine, he had much to do to stand on his Legs; so that finding his Employment above his strength, he wished to be eased of it, but saw very little Likelihood of other Missioners coming to succeed him. For, except at *St. Salvador*, there were only six *Capeverins* in all the Country, and when any of them died, it was difficult to find one to replace him.

The great Duke's Sons.

ONE Evening, an Hour after Sun-set, the Author heard Abundance of People singing, but in such a doleful Tone, as caused Horror. Upon Enquiry his Domesticks told him, that it was the People of some *Libette*, who came with their *Mahoute* to discipline themselves in the Church, because it was a *Friday* in *March*. This surprized him, and he presently sent to open the Church Doors, light two Candles, and ring the Bell. Before they came-in, they continued a Quarter of an Hour upon their Knees before the Church, singing *Salve regina* in their Language, with a very doleful Harmony; then entering the

The Native Practice.

* Cath. as before, p. 569.

* The same, p. 570.

1667.

Call.

Penalty and
Discipline.

Church, he gave them all holy Water. They were about two hundred Men, carrying great Logs of Wood of a vast Weight for the greater Penance. They were on their Knees, and beat their Breasts. Our *Capuchin* having caused the Candles to be put-out, they disciplined themselves a whole Hour with Leather Thongs, and Corps made of the Bark of Trees. After saying the Litanies of the Lady of *Lorette*, they returned home, leaving the Branches of Trees they brought without the Church, which served in the Garden. The Author takes Occasion from hence to reproach the *Europeans*, who, he says, are so far from performing such Acts of Devotion, (he ought to have said Superstition) that they despise those who do, calling them, in a contemptible Manner, Hermits, Executioners of Christ, and wry Necks.

A Com.

ANOTHER Night, in *March* 1668, after the *Ave-Mary* Bell, their Blacks, who were in the Garden, called *Carli* to see the Heaven burn. He went-out, imagining it might be some Fire on a Mountain, but found it was one of the greatest blazing Stars or Comets he had ever seen. He told them how it was called, and that it foreboded some Ill to the World, therefore advised them to do Penance for their Sins.

Kolla, or
Kola Nuts.

ONE Day they brought him a Quantity of round Roots like Truffles*, but these grow on Trees†, and are as big as a Lemon: They enclose four or five Nuts, red within. To keep them fresh, they put Earth about them; and before they use, wash them, then taking a little Drink after it. They taste a little bitterish, but give the Water a very sweet Relish. They call them *Kolla*, and the *Portuguese* at *Loanda* make great Account of them. The Author sent a Parcel of them to his good Patrons in *Europe*, who returned him some Presents.

The Garden
improved.

MICHAEL ANGELO returning after he had baptized Abundance of Infants and Youths, applied himself to cultivate the Garden, whence they had their chief Nourishment; and finding there some Vine-Plants, he transplanted them to a rising Ground. He sowed several Sorts of *European* Grain, which all came-up in Perfection. He had brought with him a great many Iron Tools from a *Likatte* that was near an Iron Mine; where he had caused Spades, Shovels, Hooks, Axes, and other Utensils to be made for the Use of the Garden, and cutting of Wood: f Likewise twelve sharp Spears‡, two Foot in Length, for fixing on Staves to defend the Blacks against the wild Beasts when they passed through

a the Desert; for being sometimes surprized when they least think of it, they can make no use of their Bows.

Figgs from
Kongo.

He told the Author, that flying once from a Tyger, and there being no Tree to climb, he was forced to run a great Way into a Thicket of Brambles: Without which Shift he must have lost his Life, as one of the Blacks did; who, to avoid pricking his Skin among the Briers, trusted to the Swiftness of his Heels. The *Capuchin* Habit kept the Thorns from hurting his Body, but they had made as many Holes in his Legs as there are in a Cullender.

THE Author in his Turn set-out, with twenty of those who accompanied *Michael Angelo*, and were content to serve for Victuals. In some Places they fled as soon as they saw him, having, in all Probability, never seen any *Capuchin*. On his Return he found the Garden made-up after the Manner of *Italy*, and planted with Vines, Orange and Lemon-Trees.

He sends
and to
Europe.

THERE still remain in *Kongo*, says the Author, Abundance of Sorcerers and Incanters, (as there are Heretics in *Europe*) who are the Ruin of those People, otherwise tractable enough. It is in a Manner impossible for the King to root them out, though he has given Leave to several of his great Men, who know their lurking Places, to fire their Cottages*; but having Spies abroad, they are very seldom taken†.

THE great Duke, who was now come home, frequented their Convent every Day. The Author having once enquired where he had left his Army, which consisted of one hundred and fifty thousand Blacks, he replied, That he had dropped them by the Way in the *Likatte* to which they belonged; and that when he came to *Bamba* he had but ten Thousand left. There was a pretty large Timber Chapel in the Church, where stood the Tombs of the Duke's deceased Ancestors, over which there were Figures like Mortars, made of Clay, and coloured with Red. The Duke once told them, that he had refused to be King, that he might be nearer the *Portuguese*, to have the Opportunity sometimes of drinking Wine and Brandy. They understood his Grace perfectly well, but would not seem to do so, to prevent using him to such Familiarity; for it is difficult to get Wine for the Mass, there being none but what is brought out of *Europe*. This Duke went habited like the King, but had not so many Attendants. He wore a Coat down to his Knees made of Palm-Tree Leaves dyed black, and over it a Cloak of blue Cloth; a red Cap with a Gold

* Is this to be imputed to Priestcraft, or Priest-Ignorance? conceive how Roots can be said to grow on Trees.

p. 574.
p. 575.

† Another Instance of Priestcraft, as well as Priest-Ignorance.

* Or, Pignuts.

† These we suppose are the Halberds he mentions,

‡ *Carli*, as before,

1667. Galloom round it. About his Neck he had a large Pair of Beads, with above fifty Medals; his Legs and Feet were bare like the rest. The Son of one Lord carried his Hat, another his Simitar, and a third his Arrows. Fifty Blacks went before him playing confusedly on several Instruments; twenty-five Men of Note and an hundred Archers followed him. It is no difficult Matter to find such Abundance of Soldiers, the Men exercising no Trade, except some few who work in Iron, or make those Clothes of Palm-Tree Leaves.

His Dress and Arms.

SECT. IV.

Carl's Distresses at Bamba.

Michael Angelo, his Companion, dies. Carl himself fell sick: His miserable Condition. Plagued with Rats. A useful Monkey. Danger from Ants; and from Fire. Civility of the Blacks. Set-out for Loanda. Distress on the Way. His Shift to get Food. Prodigious Loss of Blood. Death of Missioners. Corners of Colombo. A dangerous Place.

Michael Angelo dies.

MICHAEL ANGELO one Day told the Author, that he found himself much spent, and presently after fell into a double tertian Fever. This troubled Carl the more, because in that Country there are neither Physicians nor Medicines. As Bleeding is the only Remedy used, he for that Purpose sent to the great Duke's Surgeon, a Black, who had learned that Profession at Loanda. The Disease increased, and soon after he complained of a Pain in his left Ear, which spread over his Neck. This seeming to be an Ulceration in the Almonds of his Ears, the Author anointed him with Oil of Angelico made at Bamba, which took away the Pain from one Side; but it removed to the other, and the Swelling increased, which made him forbear using the Oil, for fear it might do more Harm than Good. In short, he died the fifteenth Day. In this Affliction Carl was comforted by the Coming of Father Philip, their Superior. Angelo had been blooded fifteen Times, and the Author being apprehensive it was too much, gave an Account of his Distemper afterwards to the Physician at Angola, who told him it had been better to have bled him thirty Times.

Carl still sick.

HOWEVER, he also fell ill of a Fever, which increasing, Philip caused him to be blooded twice a Day; which having been repeated forty Times, without abating the Fever, brought him into a desperate Condition, being nothing but Skin and

Bones. At length the Fury of the Disorder decreasing, the Superior departed, after instructing the Blacks how to manage in his Absence: But being not able to turn himself in his Bed, and almost blinded with losing so much Blood, the Blacks stole what they could, and brought him, when they thought of it, a Porringer of Broth; for he could swallow no Solids.

Angelo is now in a Room.

In this miserable Condition he one Day received a Visit from a Portuguese Jesuit from St. Salvador, who was returning to the College at Loanda. Having staid two Days, he presented him with some Pullets*, and departed. For all he was not able to sit-up in Bed, without being held by two Blacks, yet he every Day baptized ten or twelve Children. With the Alms he maintained his Family, who would all have forsaken him, had they wanted Meat. He likewise married several of the chief People: One of them gave him a She-Goat, whose Milk he drank every Day, which indeed was little in Quantity, but counted a great Dainty in that Country. He would have eaten an Egg, but they were reckoned unwholesome. This Happiness he had in his Illness, that he slept all Night, which is twelve Hours long, never varying half an Hour all the Year round; only he was terribly plagued with the large Rats, which in Swarms ran over him and bit his Toes. To prevent this, he caused his Bed to be placed in the Middle of the Room, and Mats laid all about it for his Blacks to lie on; but still, says the good Missioner, those cursed Creatures disturbed him.

Plagued with Rats.

HAVING taken the Freedom to acquaint the great Duke with the Trouble he had from the Rats, and the Stink of his Blacks, who had always some wild and disagreeable Smell, he sent him a little tame Monkey. This he said would secure him against the Rats by blowing hard on them two or three Times when he spied them; and would expel the ill Scent of the Blacks by the Perfume of his Skin, which smelt of Musk. This Monkey, which he laid at the Foot of his Bed, performed his Offices effectually; besides keeping his Head and Beard clean, and combed better than the Blacks could, who are less tractable Animals. These Monkeys are different from the Civet Cats, several of which he saw at Loanda, chained-up in wooden Cages, the Owner once a Week with a Spoon clearing the Purse of its Civet, which they call *Angellia* (or *Angellia*.)

A useful Monkey.

He just began to mend, though the Fever had not left him, when one Night he was awakened by the Monkey leaping upon his Head. The Author, who thought the Rats had frightened him, was winking much of him, when the Blacks arose, crying,

Danger from Ants.

* Civet, as before, p. 572.

† The same.

* The Rate of a Pullet in Congo was three thousand

Carl, as before, p. 573.

five hundred Shells, which are the Value of a Pilote.

Ants, &c. Father! Asking what was the Matter, they said, *The Ants had broken loose, and there was no Time to be lost.* Not being able to stir, he bid them carry him into the Garden, which four of them did upon his Straw Bed in the Nick of Time; for the Ants already began to run upon his Legs, and get to his Body. After shaking them off, they set Fire to the Straw in four Rooms, where the Ants were already above half a Foot thick; besides, the Porch and Walking-Place were full. Being thus destroyed, he was carried back to his Chamber, where the Stink was so great, that he was forced to hold the Monkey close to his Face. He had scarce slept half an Hour before he was awaked with the Light of Fire at the Chamber-Door: It seems the Flame had taken hold of the Thatch of the House, and fearing it might increase with the Wind, he caused himself to be carried again into the Garden.

THE Author was so discomfited with all this Hurry, that he could not sleep afterwards; and before the Night was quite over, he had a new Alarm, occasioned by a Hut being consumed in burning-out the Ants, which made the Blacks get-out of their Houses for fear the whole Town should be fired. *Carli* caused himself once more to be carried into the Garden. This was a great Deliverance, for had he been alone in his Bed, as he was then unable to stir, they had undoubtedly eaten him up alive. This often happens in the Kingdom of *Angola*, where in the Morning there are Cows found devoured in the Night by Ants, and nothing left of them but the Bones. It is a Happiness to escape them, for there are some that fly, and are difficult to be removed from the Place where they lay hold.

THE Author had a young Tyger given him, but he did not care to keep it, especially because the Monkey would not lie upon the Bed with him, and it died soon after. The great Duke's Visits were a Comfort to him, and when he could not come himself, he sent some of his chief Men, who would stay three or four Hours sitting about him, on Mats: But as they had their Pipes continually in their Mouths, and the Smoke offended his Head, he was constrained to intimate so much to them; and they were so obliging, that when they came, they left their Pipes in the Garden.

HIS Distemper continuing, he had Recourse to the Intercession of *St. Anthony of Padua* as his only Remedy. At length he resolved to be

carried to *Loanda*, notwithstanding he was sensible of the Fatigue, and could find no Black that would go as his Interpreter, though he could speak enough himself to be understood. The great Duke promised him a great many Blacks, but he found not enough to carry his Baggage. He took a different Way from that he came, and did not pass through *Dante*. During the whole Journey, which lasted twenty-five Days, he could not open his Mouth till Night, so that the Blacks often came to see whether he was not dead. One Day being to pass through a River, they discovered about twenty-five Elephants that were gone to drink. Having crossed with some Danger, the two Blacks who carried him going up a Hill, and not holding the Pole of the Hammock fast, let him fall plumb on the Ground, which put him quite beside himself, the Pole having hit him on the Head, and almost broke it. After taking him up again, he bound his Head with a Handkerchief without speaking one Word, fearing, if he complained, they might leave him there, and fly unto the Woods.

BRING come to a *Libatte*, they left him there in a Cottage upon a little Straw, and carried away his Staff which he had brought out of *Italy*. He was very weak for want of Sustenance, but no-body appeared all Day till Sun-setting, when the Women returned with their Children from the Fields. Having at his Request boiled him a Pullet he had brought with him, which they dressed very well, he took the Broth, and gave them the Fowl, which made a great Feast among them. All his Sustenance, during the Journey, was a Porringer of Broth a Day. They gave him here two *Nicolas*, which are so refreshing and dainty, that he could not forbear eating them, though cautiously.

NEXT Day they carried him to a *Libatte*, where he found all the People making Stuffs of Palm-Tree Leaves. As they would not quit their Business to carry him, he bethought himself of a Bag of those Shells they call *Zimbis*, and began to call them; but they were deaf to him, though sitting in the next Cottage on the Ground about their Fire, which is their usual Posture. Finding it was to no Purpose to spend his Breath, he crawled out of the Bed, which was about a Foot from the Ground, upon all Fours, to the Cottage-Door; and calling a *Mideche*, or young Lad, who was playing with his Companion, got him to help in opening his Portmantua. Thence he drew the *Zimbis*, and shaking the Bag, those

Their Pipes, which are an Ell long, have great Bowls like a little Pot, which are never out, as before, p. 574. He says, a little lower, that he had such Confidence in this Advocate of his, that he fancied he saw him on the Road before his Hamock: But his Distresses ought to have eased him of his rapid Confidence, *St. Anthony* was not before the Hamock then. In the English Translation, Staffs.

1607.
Carr.

hard-hearted Blacks, at the Sound of the Shells, immediately came to him, and agreed to carry him, for some of them, to the next *Libatte*: At length, by the Help of *Zimbi*, Benda, and Medals, he got to *Banda*, the first Place belonging to the *Portuguese*.

BEING met there by a *Portuguese* and a Priest, they carried him to their House. His Face was as yellow as Saffron, nor could he either speak or open his Eyes. They understanding by his Carriers, that he had eaten but one Porringer of Broth a Day, and never spoke all the Journey, endeavoured to recover him with Malmsey and new-laid Eggs.

HAVING continued there two Days, he went away to *Laanda*. There he continued six Months, without being able to stir out of his Bed, and never quit of the Fever. He loathed Flesh, and could eat nothing but a little Fish. After that, he bled at the Nose, and lost three or four Pound of Blood a Day, to which the Heat he endured in the Hamock contributed much. It was surprising to him, that there should be so much Blood in a Man's Body. The Physician told him, that all the Water he drank turned to Blood, and he drank five or six Bottles a Day; for they allow the Sick to drink as much as they will. The Physician had him bled twenty-four Times, by Way of Revolution. During his three Years Sickness, he went under that Operation ninety-seven Times, without reckoning the Blood that ran in great Quantities at his Nose, Mouth and Ears, which to him seemed prodigious.

Death of
Missioners.

DURING his Stay at *Laanda*, *John Chrysostom*, Superior of *Laanda*, came thither, and sent two Missioners, *Peter de Barbi* and *Joseph Merry de Boffette*, *Italians*, to the Province of *Mossangans*, one of the chiefest in the Kingdom; but, within a few Days, one of them died, and the other was at the Point of Death. The Author, having desired the Superior to send him to *Columbo*, two Days Journey from *Laanda*, to try to recover his Health, went thither with *John Baptist de Salluian*, to a House of the *Copuchins*, near the River *Kuarna* (or *Quarna*) where there are Abundance of Crocodiles. In the Garden, which is a very fine one, there are Oranges, Lemons, and other Sorts of Fruit; among the rest, there is one like the *St. John Apple*, at the End of which is a Chestnut little differing from the *Italian*. The Apple itself is not eaten, because it is full of Fibres; but they suck the Juice, which has a muscadine Taste. The Chestnut is

boiled, and tastes like Almonds; is very hot, but the Apple cold. It is called *Bofeu*.

Portuguese
Knope.

NEAR that Place live several *Portuguese* Farmers, who keep a Number of Swine, Cows, and Sheep; but know not how to make Cheese, it being very difficult there to bring the Milk to curd. They sometimes took the cool Air under a fine Row of Trees, ten Paces distant, reaching from the Church to the River. These Trees bear a certain Sort of Fruit, like great Plum; but very harsh, and hold their Leaves all the Year round.

JOHN BAPTIST gave the Author an Account of his Travels in those Parts of *Africa*, and, among the rest, of his being at *Kassangi*. He told him also, that he designed to go to the Kingdom of *Malembo*, or *Mattimba*, where, of late Years, reigned Queen *Singa*, who died in the *Ramish* Faith; but that after her Death, the People returned to their old Religion. He agreed to send for Carr, if he could gain Admittance into the Country: He went, but the other heard nothing from him afterwards.

THE Distemper growing upon him, the Superior obliged him to return to *Laanda*: But the Dread of going to Sea again, made him unwilling to quit *Columbo*, though he was left there with only two Blacks, and in other Respects the Place was scarce to be endured; being tormented Day and Night with infinite Numbers of Gnats and Flies, which almost darken the Air: Besides the continual Fear of Serpents, Crocodiles, and Lions, who seldom failed a Night of devouring some Cow, Calf, or Sheep.

A Dangerous
Place.

SECT. V.

The Author's Return to Brazil and Europe.

Sails from *Laanda*. Dangerous Calm. Provision fail. Come to *Baya* in Brazil: A Romish Procession there. Leaves *Baya*. The Ship runs a-ground: Gets-off again. Business and Diversions a-board. Two strong Englishmen. Arrives at *Lisbon*: Embarks again: Arrives at *Cadix*. Whimsical Scuffle. St. James of Compostella. Return to *Cadix*. Discover two Sails. Meet with, and take a Turkish Rover. Rescues a Spanish Prize. The Storm drives them to *Oran* in Barbary.

AT that Time, there being a Vessel at *Loanda*, bound for *Brazil*, Carr obtained Leave to return to *Italy*. When it was ready to

* Carr, as before, p. 575.
Clemens.

* Carr, as before, p. 576.

* This, doubtless, is the same, which de l'Isle, in his Map, makes the Capital of the Country of the *Jagus Kassangi*. The Remarks of *John Baptist* will be given hereafter in the Description.

* Carr, as before, 577.

1667.
Curt.

full, he went a-board, and found it loaden with a Elephants Teeth and Slaves, to the Number of six hundred and eighty, Men, Women, and Children. It was a grievous Sight, to behold how these unhappy People were bestowed. The Men were standing in the Hold, fastened one to another with Stakes, for fear they should rise and kill the Whites: The Women were between Decks; and, those who were with Child, in the great Cabin: The Children, in the Stereage, were pressed together like Herrings in a Barrel, which caused an intolerable Heat and Stench. The Captain had made a Bed for *Carli* on the Quarter-Deck, with Mats to keep him from the Rain and Dew.

THIS Voyage is generally performed in thirty, or thirty-five Days at farthest; because they sail in a Line, there being no Occasion for going to the Cape of Good Hope for a Wind: However, the frequent Calms made it fifty Days before they reached *America*. During this Time they endured great Heat under the Equator, and the Author baptized some Blacks; it being forbidden, under Pain of Excommunication, to carry any to *Brazil*, who have not received that Sacrament.

Dangerous
Calms.

THE Portuguese, sensible of the Danger attending such Calms, one Day set the Image of *St. Anthony* against the Mast, repeating these Words on their Knees; *St. Anthony, our Countryman, be pleased to stand there, till you have given us a fair Wind to continue our Voyage*. Soon after, some little Wind springing-up, they sailed forward, and passed very close by the Island, called the *Assumption of our Lady*, but did not touch, thinking they had no Need of any Thing: However, a few Days after, they began to want Provisions, the Provider not having rightly considered how great a Number of Mouths there was to feed.

CARLI had a Dish of Blood before him, occasioned by the Return of his Fever, when the Captain came and acquainted him with their Distress. The Missioner directed him to some Provisions, left him by his Friends, telling him, it might keep the Whites alive for some Time; and that as for the Blacks, he must have Patience if they died, since there was no Possibility of relieving them, otherwise than by giving them Water; which, the Climate being hot, they might live-on at least two Days.

Promising
false.

THIS dismal News being come to the Knowledge of those poor Creatures, the Children began to cry for Mercy: The Women hearing them, set-up the same Cry, and the Men made-up the dismal Harmony; which, says the Author, would have daunted the boldest Heart. When they

were a little pacified, he exhorted them all to Patience, saying, That this was a Punishment upon the Blacks, among other Things, perhaps, because some of them came on board without confessing: And upon the Whites, because the blessed Virgin was offended at them for giving her Name to a Rope's End, with which they beat the Blacks. This done, he caused them to repeat the Hymns of the holy Virgin; and they made a Vow to have eighty Masses said, forty for the Souls in Purgatory, and forty in Honour of *St. Anthony*.

THEIR Minds being a little settled, the Captain ordered every Black a Perring of Water; but those poor Wretches, especially the Children, began to cry for Hunger, which made the Author retire to his Cabin of Mats. There he continued a Day without eating, the more to pacify them.

As he lay thinking of their desperate Condition, he heard some beginning to talk of living upon Man's Flesh; for which he reproved them severely. Others continued their vicious Courses: The Master being drunk, mortally wounded a Sailor; but being the ablest and most experienced Seaman in the Ship, it was requisite to wunk at it. Three Days they continued without eating, and the Water being spent, they at length discovered Land.

THIS proved to be Cape *St. Augustine*; and on Sunday, they entered the Port of *Bay de todos Santos*, or, *The Bay of All Saints*, the capital Town of all *Brazil*, where the Viceroy resides. They found several Vessels, of all Nations, in the Harbour, which is four Leagues in Length. Next Morning, several Boats came, with Merchants and others, who had Slaves aboard: They were agreeably surprised, to find there wanted but thirty-three of the Number, considering how long they were at Sea; it often happening that half of them die in that Passage.

THE Author went ashore as well as the rest, *A Romish Priest*, but was so weak, that he had no Use of his Legs. He was entertained at the *Franciscan* Convent, where there is a Chapel of the third Order of *St. Francis*. On Maunday Thursday, the Fathers made a Procession, in which all the Images of Saints, of the third Order, were carried. Then followed three hundred Blacks, carrying whole Trees for Mortification; others had their Arms bound to a great Beam, in the Nature of a Cross, and some after other Manners, by Way of Penance, for robbing their Masters and committing other Sins.

A *Genoa* Captain, who had a good fighting Ship, and was to convey five Merchantmen, for

* *Carli*, as before, p. 577.

* Priestcraft and Superstition are inseparable.

* The same, p. 576.

1667. *Carli* fear of the Turkish Rowers, having given the Author his Passage, sent for him a-board when he was ready to sail. *Carli* went, but much against his Will, not liking, it seems, to begin so long and dangerous a Voyage upon a holy Saturday.

Loadings. THE Loading was a thousand Chests of Sugar; three thousand Rolls of Tobacco; a great Quantity of rich Wood for Dying, and making of Cabinets; Elephants Teeth: Besides the Provision of Wood, Coals, Water, Wine, Brandy, b Sheep, Hops, and Turkey. There was Abundance of Monkeys, of several Sorts; Apes, Baboons, Parrots, and some of those Birds of Brazil, which they call *Aracats*. The Ship carried fifty Guns, twenty-four Patercos, and other Necessaries. The Passengers were of several Nations, as *Italians, Portuguese, English, Dutch, Spaniards, and Indian Slaves*, who followed their Masters. The great Cabin was hired by one *Amora*, a rich Portuguese Merchant, who was returning to *Lisbon* with his Family. He gave a thousand Crowns for his Passage: and had laid out two thousand upon Provisions and other Necessaries for so long a Voyage. Observing the Author to be so sick, he offered him his Table, and a Place in his Cabin; which was large, painted, and gilt. *Carli* accepted the latter, but waved the former; because he was engaged to the Captain.

Ship ran a-ground. THEY had scarce ran two Leagues, when the Ship struck five Times furiously upon a Bank*, where it stuck fast, which put all into a great Consternation. The Officers and Pilot, in a Fright, leapt hastily into the Boat to get to Land, which was not far off; for they were still in the Harbour.

NOTHING could be heard but Cries and Complaints. Some cast a Barrel into the Sea; others a Roll of Tobacco; others a Chest of Sugar, to lighten the Ship; and every one did something to save his Life: Only the Captain sat still like a Statue, without being able to speak or stir, though he had taught six *Turks* in that same Ship. They would have fired a Cannon for the rest to come to their Assistance, but in that Hurry they could find neither Gunner, Powder, nor Match. The several Sorts of Animals, hearing such a Noise, began to play their Part, and increase the Confusion. The Author met the Captain of the ship in his Shirt, with a ghastly Countenance, though he was one of the bravest Men a-board, as he had often made it appear, fighting with the *Turks*. After hearing his Confusion, *Carli* asked him, What he intended to do

in that Case? O God, said he, I had no Mind to come a-board, but I suffered myself to be deluded: The other would have encouraged him with Hopes, that they might yet escape the Danger. Suppose it does so, said he, replied he, I am resolved to swim for it, and get off shore. The others hearing this Resolution, renewed their Exclamations. He then went into the great Cabin, and found the Portuguese Lady sitting on a Carpet, and leaning upon two Cushions, with her four Children on their Knees, their Hands clasped together in a Fright, and crying, *Mercy*. The Husband sat on a Chair, rather dead than alive: He comforted them the best he could.

MEAN While, there came a-board a Captain, *Gonzalez*, who was a Friend to *Señor Amora*, to carry him and his Family to his Ship. He seeing the horrid Confusion Things were in, began to encourage the People, and sent two of his Men to the Pump, and into the Hold, to see what Harm was done. They neither found Water, nor any Thing broken, and perceived; that the Plank they had seen on the Water, was only some of the Sheathing which had given Way. The Captain taking Heart, ordered to cast the Lead, and found but little Water for so great a Ship. Then he caused the Ship's Head to be brought about, which made the Vessel move: But it was well there happened to be but little Wind; for had it blown hard, the mull-have been beaten to Pieces. They who ran to Shore seeing her make Way, came back with the Boat, and they continued their Voyage towards *Fernambuco*, a hundred Leagues distant from *Baya de todos Santos*, where they came to an Anchor five Miles from the Town, the Harbour being unfit for great Ships.

AFTER five Days Stay, they weighed: But when they had gotten the Anchor full above Water, it broke-off so suddenly, that forty Men, who worked at hoisting it, all fell-down and hurt themselves in one Part or other; and the Ground being foul and full of Rocks, there was no recovering it.

It was pleasant to see the Ship, where every *Black and Brown* Artill worked at his Trade, as if he had been in his Shop; there were Gunsmiths, Armourers, Butchers, Shoemakers, Tailors, Coopers, and Cooks. Others mended the Colours, there being an hundred of several Sorts, very fine, upon great Days; and particularly the Pendant at the Main-Top-Mast-Head, eight Ells long, and all of Garnation Taffety. When the Weather would permit, the other Vessels bore-up, and gave them a Concert of Drums and Trumpets, with

* Could a Black discover more Policy and Superstition? Judging, that they might learn to pass the Holidays better.

* The wife Author believes this happened to *Carli*, as before, p. 179.

1667.

Call.

Ten Irish
Englishmen.

three Huzzas of all the Sailors, who took the signal from the Boatwain's Whistle. The Captain exercised his Men in firing Volleys. These Diversions were one Day interrupted by this Accident. Eleven *Englishmen* came all together to complain to the Captain, that they were not allowed Water enough to drink. This put him into such a Passion, that he went to lay-hold of a Sword, and had done them some Mischief had not Care been taken to appease him. He caused one of them to be put into the Bilbos, with two Men to stand Centinel over him, till they came to *Lisbon*, for fear he should raise some Mutiny among his Comrades: For that *Englishman*, who, it seems, was wonderfully strong, could manage a Cannon as easily as another Man could a Musket, and had formerly blown-up some Ships, by setting-Fire to the Powder. He did this, to teach the rest, when they wanted any Thing, to come singly to him, and not in a Body, like Mutineers. He served another *Englishman*, whom they called *Kill-Turk*, in the same Manner; because he had made himself drunk with two Bottles of Brandy, and was not sober again in three Days. He was so strong, that they said he had elect a Man in two with his Cutlass; and therefore it was feared, he might do some Mischief when in that Condition.

One Morning, before Sun-rising, being near the Coast of *Portugal*, they heard a Cannon fire, and the Shot fell not far from the Ship. It seems, Captain *Jeseph*, Brother to the Captain, had put up the red Antient, which was a Signal of Battle, on the Sight of a prodigious Number of Fishing-Boats, which he took for Ships. They were five hundred in Number, which sail with any Wind, and covered all the Coast. This is not to be admired at, considering most of the People in *Lisbon* eat Fish at Night, even upon Flesh Days, which causes an infinite Consumption, and it is not sold by Weight, but by the Barrel.

Arrive at
Lisbon.

They arrived at *Casalis*, a little Town without the Bar, and sailed-on to Port *St. Julian*, where they fired so many Guns, that the Report reached the City. Being come to the Mouth of the River *Tage* (or *Tagus*) Abundance of Boats came towards them, with Merchants and others, *Italians* as well as *Portuguese*, who had some Concert a-board. The Author was so altered, that he was not known by his Acquaintance, who were surprized to see him alive, after they had received an Account that he was dead. They came to an Anchor just before the Palace of Prince *Peter*, then Regent of *Portugal*, the King having been sent away to the Islands of *Tercerat*. All the Passengers had put-on such fine Cloaths, that he scarce knew them again.

Thus they do at every Port, being but meanly apparelled, as long as they are at Sea. Going a-shore, he went to the *Capuchin* Convent, there to wait for some Ship bound for *Spain*.

It was not long before an Opportunity offered: Captain *Dominic*, a Native of *Cordova*, who was desirous to have a Priest a-board him, came to offer him a Passage in his Ship the *Paradise*, which was to sail in Company of two others, the *Loretto* and *Princess*. Several *Dominicans*, *Benedictines*, and other Religious, went a-board with *Carli*; inasmuch that one said, *We were afraid we should want a Chaplain, but here are enough to keep a Choir*. However, these good, religious Men, who were very much afraid of Death, kept themselves so close under-Deck, at Sea, that not one was to be seen. During this Voyage, he converted an *Irish* Heretic, but could not vouch for the Sincerity of his Heart; such People, he owns, often relapsing, after appearing very zealous Profelytes.

At last, they came to an Anchor in that great and noble Port of *Cadix*, one of the most famous in *Europe*, which was full of Ships, Gallies, Barks, Caravels, Tartans, and other Sorts of Vessels, amounting to an hundred Sail. Just at the Entrance of the Harbour they saw twenty-five Ships of an extraordinary Bulk. There is a continual Resort of Ships from all Parts of the World, even from the *Indies*; and it is usual there to see thirty or forty Sail come-in or go-out in a Day, as if they were but little Boats. The Author going ashore with an *Italian* Gentleman and some *Spanish* Merchants, they were all presently stopped by some Custom-House-Officers, to give an account of themselves. The Gentleman and Merchants pretending to be Soldiers in the King's Service, they let them pass; after which, they caused their Goods to be loaded to go to their respective Homes? But they were no sooner in the Town, than the chief Officer of the Custom-House, with his Followers, stopped the Porters, and bid them carry the Goods thither. The *Spaniards* said they were all cleared, and there was no need of farther Search: The Custom-gave a surly Answer; one Word drew-an another; so they came to ill Language, and from ill Language to Blows. An hundred Swords were drawn in a Moment: But they were thronged so close together, that they fought with the Points of their Swords up, striking one another with the Pommel; and making such a Noise, that one would have thought there was bloody Work amongst them. The Dust flew so thick, that they could not see one another, and the Field of Battle being near the Harbour, the People hearing their

* *Carli*, as before, p. 142.

* The same, p. 151.

1657.

Carli

Cries and the Clattering of their Spados, ran thither in Crowds to part the Combatants, expecting to find many of them killed and wounded. But what Abundance of sober People could not perform was achieved in a Moment by four drunken *Englishmen*, who to make Way to go to their Ships, began to throw Stones so furiously, that both Parties agreed in an Instant to give over the Scuffle, and make their Escape as fast as they could, some one Way and some another.

THE Author repaired to the Monastery of his Order, where his Fever, which had granted him no Respite, increased, and kept him in Bed a Month; being forced, in that Time, to be six Times blooded again. Mean Time, the Ships departed, and he lost the Opportunity of going to *Italy*. In the Interim, resolving to visit the Shrine of *St. Jago* (or *James*) in *Gallicia*, he associated himself with a *Milanese Franciscan*. They embarked for *Porto*, whither a strong Gale carried them in a few Hours. From thence they went to Sea to *Birna*, and from *Birna*, with much Difficulty, a-Foot to *Compostella*, where is the famous Church of that Apostle. The Canons here are all clad in Scarlet, and called Cardinals. They told them, that none must say Mass at the Saint's Altar, but Prelates and Grandees of *Spain*; for which Reason, the Sacrifist would not permit them to say any. The Saint's Shrine is placed on the Altar, with his Image upon it; so that the Devotees who go thither, ascend four or five Steps, and put their Hat on the Head of that Statue, which is clad like a Pilgrim. There are Abundance of Silver Lamps about it, but they are all black, as if they were of Wood. The Missioners having said a *Pater* and *Ave*, went away, *Carli's* Companion telling him, that if he had thought it was as he found it, he would never have come into the Country. They lodged at a Goldsmith's, who treated them at Table with *Florentine* Wine, *Bolognia* Sauces, and *Perugian* Cheese, which the Author admired to find in a Country so distant from *Italy*.

HAVING been informed, that at Cape *Finisterre*, there was a Ship ready to sail to *Cadix*, they hastened to *Corunna* (or the *Grain*) just as the Captain of an *English* Ship was going into his Boat to embark. Although the Author knew he was a Heretic, yet he begged, in *Portuguese*, a Passage to *Cadix*, for God's Sake. The Captain told him he was welcome, and that he would not only carry him to *Cadix*, but to *Seville*, if he would. *Carli* thanked him for his charitable Offer; but his Companion, who, to his Regret, was in a different Habit, was forced to pay for his Passage. This was a great Man of War of

a seventy Guns, and three hundred Men, laden with Anchors and other naval Stores. It was bound to all the Ports of *Spain*, to find-out twenty-four *English* Frigates sent against the *Turks*, and to furnish them with what they wanted.

SOON after they were out at Sea, they discovered two Ships at a great Distance: The Captain having viewed them with a Prospective-Glass, went into his Cabin, and talked to his Officers in *English*, who went immediately to give-out Orders. Presently after, the Drums began to beat, and the Soldiers to take their Posts. They steered with a side-Wind directly down upon them, and having fourteen Sails a-board, they flew like the Wind itself, and cut the Water in a most violent Manner.

WITHIN an Hour, they came-up with the two Ships, which the Captain judged rightly to be a *Turkish* Corsair and its Prize. As they put-out no Colours, she gave them a Gun to bring them to; but being two to one, and well manned, they answered with a Bullet. At the same Time, the Man of War furled his Sails, and gave them a Broadside of twenty Guns, which made such a Thundering as would daunt the bravest Heart. She having the Wind, it carried all the Smoke upon the *Turks*; yet they fired like mad from both Ships, for the Prize was manned with them. The principal Christians on board her were put in Chains, and the rest forced to help at the Guns. After the Cannonading had continued an Hour and an half, the *English* Captain perceiving the Fight was likely to hold, caused one of the Enemies to be grappled for boarding. Then it was they began to hear the Groans and Cries of the poor wounded Men, lying about the Deck one upon another, and serving to shelter those who fought. The Attack was furious, and the Resistance vigorous; but the Enemy being inferior in Number, began to give Way and yield. The *English*, without losing Time, leaped a-board, put the *Turks* in Irons, and set the Christians at Liberty. Mean Time, the other Vessel fled, but being loaded with Goods was soon brought-up by the Corsair Prize, which, being less than the Man of War, and loaded with nothing but Provisions and Ammunition, the Captain sent after her. They fired some Guns, but perceiving the great Ship came-up within Cannon-Shot, yielded. Those on board were *Spaniards*, amongst whom were some *Napolitans*, *Milanese*, and *Dutch*. They were fourscore in all, Sailors, Merchants and Passengers; besides twelve who were killed: Of the *Turks* there were an hundred and thirty, the rest being either killed or dangerously wounded.

* *Carli*, as before, p. 382.

THE

1667.

Represents a
Spanish
Prize.

THE Captain having ordered all the Christians to be brought before him, they kneeled-down to thank him for their Deliverance. Then he asked, who was their Captain; and a lusty Man, half stripped, answered him in *Spanish*, that he was; and afterwards in *Portuguese*, told him, that he was a *Spaniard*, coming from *Malaga* laden with Wine: That near Cape *St. Vincent*, he was attacked by the *Corfair*, which was well manned, with about two hundred and twenty-five Soldiers and Sailors; and that being much inferior in Strength, he yielded, after some Resistance. The Captain bid them go dress themselves, and take Possession of their Ship again. They returned him Abundance of Thanks, and came under his Convey to *Cádiz*.

A Storm
drives them

As they proceeded on their Voyage, the Sky began to grow dark on a sudden; and fearing some Storm was gathering, they lowered their Sails just in Time; for but a Moment after, the Wind blew so outrageously, that the Ship was left to the Mercy of the Elements. Then was there heard such Halloing and Calling as increased the Terror of approaching Death: But the Captain bid the Missioners fear nothing; for that the Ship being new, would certainly bring them off. The *Franciscan* finding they were every Moment in Danger of perishing, told the Author, that they had done ill in going aboard those *Heretics*, who are continually under Excommunication. Meanwhile, the Man at the Top-Mast-Head cried, Land, Land. The Captain ran-up and perceived they were upon the Coast of *Barbary*, the Storm having carried them a great Way up the *Mediterranean*: For this Reason, he gave Orders to steer towards *Oran*, a strong Place belonging to the King of *Spain*, that he might get thither before any *Turks* discovered him; which was effected in less than an Hour: Had they over-shot this Port, the Wind would have carried them directly to *Algier*.

To Oran in
Barbary.

THEIR Captain went ashore next Morning, with some of his Officers and the *Spanish* Captain, to visit the Governor, who, in the Name of his Catholic Majesty, thanked the *English* for the Service they had done. This Fortress seems to be of great Consequence, and in a Manner impregnable: It is well provided with Cannon, and very commodious to Christians, when driven by Storms upon that Coast, there being no other Port thereabout for them to put into. Next Morning, the Wind being fair, they weighed Anchor and soon arrived at *Cádiz*. The Author had Thoughts of going ashore to the *Capuchin* Monastery, but the Captain having hired a Bark to run-up to *Seville*, where he had some Business, offered to carry him thither. There went aboard

thirty Men, to row in case the Wind failed. They touched at *St. Lucar* for some Hours, and then kept going all Night. Being arrived at *Seville*, the Author thanked him for so many Favours, declaring, that he could not have received more from a Catholic. The Captain made him such an Answer, as implied, that *Capuchins* were in no good Esteem among the *English*.

Represents
Kongo.

S E C T. VI.

Carl's Return to Europe, and Travels through Spain and France.

Come to *Seville*. Spanish Charity quite cold. *Cordoya*. A vast Cathedral. Moorish Palace at *Granada*. Come to *Malaga*. The Spanish Gallies there. *Almeria*. *Carthage*. *Valencia*. *Alicant*. *Monferratte*. *Barcelona*. Difference of Slaveries. A violent Storm. *Mataloni*. *Alhama*. *Perpignan*. *Narbonne*. *Bellers*. *Toulouse*. *Agde*. *Arles*. *Marteques*. *Aix*. *Marfeilles*. *Toulon*. *St. Troupez*. A lying Miracle. *Villa Franca*. *Genoa*. News from *Kongo*: A *Capuchin* eaten there by the Blacks.

HE staid eight Days here at the *Capuchin* Monastery, which is great, considering the Poverty of the Order, and well filled with Religious. The Town would not be unlike *Milan*, were the Streets handsome and wide. The Dome of the Cathedral is nothing inferior to that at *Milan*, only that it is not of Marble, but of a Stone somewhat like it, yet softer. It is the Custom throughout all *Spain*, to make their Choir and high Altar in the Middle of the Church, particularly in Cathedrals; which is very inconvenient where there is a great Resort of People, though otherwise they are large and stately Structures. The Steeple is so big and well built, that a Man may go-up to it on Horseback, or in a Litter. The Author was surprized to see so many Bells in it; for there are no fewer than three that belong to the Clock. He made haste down, for fear of being stuned with the terrible Noise of their Clattering, which began as soon as he had gotten into the Street, sounding as loud as if all the Bells in the Town had been rung.

THE King's Garden is fine enough, and has Abundance of Water-Works, Orange, and Lemon Trees; yet there is nothing in it but what is common in *Italy*. The Convent of the *Reglets* is very large, but of an ancient Structure. There are in it above an hundred and fifty Religious, besides those in the Infirmary. The Canons of *Seville* are very rich, and always go in

* Carl's, as before, p. 583.

* The same, p. 584.

1657. Coaches drawn by four Mules. At the Time *Carl* was here they expected Monseigneur *Spinola*, an *Italian*, who had the Archbishoprick of that City conferred on him.

Spanish
Charity
quite cold.

He set-out from thence a-Foot for *Cordova*, passing through *Carmena* and other small Places, along a wretched Road, where there is neither House nor Tree to be found, nor so much as Water to cool one's Mouth. This made him provide a Bottle of Wine, which a Gentleman he met on the Road bought for him: For, it seems, he had no Hopes of having it given him for God's Sake, by the Inn-Keeper; and were it not for Folks of Quality, who relieve *Capuchins*, it would be impossible for them to live upon Charity, the People being wholly Strangers to giving of Alms*. Being in a Town where there was no Convent of the Order, he begged some Bread, for God's Sake, of a Baker, which so astonished him, that he stood like a Statue. The considerate Mendicant left him and his Bread, for fear, in case he begged any longer, the Baker would have fainted away.

Cordova.

BEING come to *Cordova*, he went to their Monastery, where he was forced to be satisfied with the *Spanish* Dish called *Olla Podrida*, that is, *Rotten-Pot*. This Name is not improper, for it is an extravagant Medley of several Things, as Onions, Garlic, Pumpkin, Cucumber, and white Beets, with one Bit of Pork, and two of Mutton, which being boiled with the rest are almost lost: There was Saffron enough in it to have dyed his Skin as yellow as his Distemper had done. It is a great Dainty with *Spaniards*, but a scurvy Meal for those who are not used to it*.

A most
curious

THE Cathedral, on the Outside, looked to be bigger than all the Town: Nor did his Sight deceive him, for being in it, he was amazed to see a Church so large, that from one Side of it a Man can scarce see the Wall on the other; and were it proportionable in Height, it would be one of the Wonders of the World. There are within ten Rows of Pillars, fifteen in each Row. The middle Isle is very spacious, after the modern Manner, and gilt about the high Altar and Choir. A Canon told the Author, that there were in it three hundred and sixty-six Altars; on the chief of them is a very large Tabernacle all of precious Stones, which has a Revenue of three thousand Livres appropriated to it. In a large Chapel there is a great Silver *Ciborium* that weighs ninety-six Ounces. Upon a Pillar standing by itself, there is a Man painted kneeling, which they said was the Picture of a Christian, who had been many Years a Slave there in the Time of the

Moor, and had, with his Nails, carved a Cross upon that Pillar: It looked as if it had been done with a Penknife. *Carl* believes he was very long about it, the Pillar being of very fine Marble. *Cordova* is seated in a great Vale, with a River running by the Walls, which formerly ran through the Middle of it; for the City was then very large, but at present is of no great Compass, and has nothing else remarkable in it.

Frage in
Kings.

SETTING-OUT for *Alcala la Real*, some *Spaniards* told him, that *Analysia* was the Garden of Spain; whereupon he said to himself, God keep me from the rest of Spain, if this be the Garden. That Town stands upon a Hill, and has nothing remarkable in it.

GRANADA, whither he went next, is a beautiful and large City, but yet inferior to *Seville*. The *Capuchins* have two Monasteries there. The Palace of the *Moorish* Kings, called the *Albambra*, stands upon a Hill, which, though very high, has Plenty of Water. The Rooms in this Edifice are so numerous, that a Man may lose himself, as in a Labyrinth. Their Ceilings are very curious, being made of a coloured Plaster that still looks new. There remain two Baths where the *Moor* used to wash themselves, one hot, the other cold. There is another Hill, on which they put Christians to Death, where Abundance of Relics are kept.

FROM *Granada*, the Author went to *Lerena*, the Wine of which Place is looked on to be the best in Spain; but the People speak such ill *Spanish*, that they are hardly to be understood; They call them *Biscalini*. At *Antequera*, a Town as big as a City, he rested eight Days in one of their Monasteries, and then passed-on to *Malaga*, which is an indifferent good Sea-Port, very populous, and full of Trade. The Archbishop was a *Dominican*, Brother to Don John of Austria. He was told his Revenue was worth eighty thousand Ducats a Year.

Comes to
Malaga.

WHILST he waited here for a Ship, he put himself into the Hands of an *English* Physician, who so far mended his Condition, that he bled only at the Nose. For eight Days, he was pretty well, and then relapsed as bad as ever. At length, six *Spanish* Gallies, returning from the Straits of *Gibraltar*, came to take in Provisions and go winter at *Cartagena*. They were commanded by the Marquis de Santa Cruz, formerly General of the Gallies of Naples and Sicily. His Title before was that of *Boyena*, which he resigned to his Son, at that Time General of the *Sicilian* Gallies. That noble Lord, upon the Author's Application, not only granted him

* It seems, the *Spaniards* are not more ready than the *Kings* Blacks to give Alms to religious Mendicants, whom they consider as so many Locusts that eat them up. *Carl*, as before, p. 584.

1667. his Passage, but took him aboard his own Galley to be his Chaplain and Confessor during the Voyage, the Priest belonging to those Gallies having been left sick at Cartagena.

The Spanish Galley.

DURING this Voyage, which lasted fifteen Days, he envied their Happiness who were aboard great Ships, these latter being more commodious and expeditious than Gallies. Discovering a Sail by Moon-light, the Oars were hard plied to fetch her up: When they were near, she set up English Colours, yet the Gallies hemmed her in, and gave her a Gun. She answered, and the Captain launching his Boat, came aboard his Excellency. That Vessel appeared like a Mountain to those who were in the Gallies: The Stern was all gilt; they were cruising upon the Turks, whom they mortally hate: And did all Princes follow their Example, those wicked Pirates would scarce shew their Heads at Sea.

Almeria. Cartagena.

AT Almeria they continued two Days laying in Water and other fresh Provisions. The Town is neither large nor populous, but seems to have been considerable in the Time of the Moors, being encompassed by Mountains, and defended by a good Fort: It is adorned with Abundance of Fountains of very pure Water. In their Way forward they took three Turkish Brigantines: The Men were distributed among the Gallies, and the Vessels manned with Christians and Turkish Slaves. At last they arrived at Cartagena, where is an excellent Port formed by Nature, shut in with Mountains, and very safe, especially for Gallies. The Town seemed to have been formerly considerable, but was then the most wretched Place in Spain; for after the Inhabitants had stoned their Bishop, they were seven Years without Rain, but ever since it rains twice or thrice a Year: However, the Country is barren, and they carry Basket thither out of Italy to maintain the People belonging to the Gallies that winter there. Thence he went to Caratana, where he saw the holy Cross brought by an Angel from Heaven, and set on an Altar, where a Priest was saying Mass without a Cross. He went on to Valencia, a very fine City, delightful for its Gardens, the pleasantest of which is the Archbishop's: Thence to Murcia and Alicante, a little Town, but of good Trade, the Houses high and well built. He continued his Journey to Tortosa and Tarragona, where there is a beautiful Dome, and then came to Masferrate. One would think all the Way to it was hewed-out of the Rock, through which it passes. In this Place, continually resorted to by Pilgrims, there are as many Chapels as Myseries of the Rosary, with a very great Number of Silver and Gold Lamps, besides

Valencia. Alicante.

Murcia. Tortosa.

a some of Amber, the Ornaments of the Altars being answerable to that Grandeur.

From the Lady of Masferrate he went to Barcelona, the Capital of Catalonia, and a Bishoprick. The Capuchins have three Monasteries there without the Town: The City is large and beautiful, abounding with all Sorts of Necessaries, and would be the most considerable Place in those Parts, had it a safe Harbour for great Ships. Carli took Notice of the Music they used upon Rejoicings, for instead of Violins at Weddings, they had Fifes and Trumpets, which make the Church shake.

DURING his Stay at Barcelona, there came thither Peter de Siffari, one of their Lay-Brothers, who had been taken six Months before with Father Luis of Palermo, and carried to Algier. Luis found no Difficulty to get his Living there, by preaching, saying Masses, and hearing Confessions, over and above paying his Master so much a Month as they had agreed upon. For this Reason he had his Liberty to go about the Town freely: But then there was the more demanded for him when he came to be ransomed, no less than three thousand Ducats, whereas the other was sold for three hundred, being only fit for the Oar; and as it was easier to raise this last Sum, Peter was first ransomed.

Difference of Masters.

WITH this Lay-Brother the Author went aboard a Vessel bound for Sardinia. As they entered the Gulph of Lion, there arose a most terrible Storm: The Waves tossed the Bark like a Nut-shell; and Mountains of Water broke over it every Moment. The worst of it was, that the Seamen could not hear one another for the Noise of the Sea, and of the Passengers; which obliged the Captain to draw his Sword and drive all under Deck who could not assist them. While the Vessel seemed ready to overset with the Beating of the Sea, a Wave struck against it with such Violence, that it broke the Lashings of one of the Guns. The Cannon being loose, ran down to the lower Side with such Fury, and gave such a Shock, that it was a Wonder the Bark was not flayed: The Noise it made increased the Terror, which the Darkness of the Night spread. The Sailors, wet and spent, resolved to let the Bark run before the Wind. The Vessel, besides being much battered, had one Mast spent, and the Sails half rent; so that the Author never thought himself so near being cast away as at that Time. About Day-break the Sea seemed to grow somewhat stiller, and the Sky clearing-up by the Rising of the Sun, they discovered Mountains not above a League from them, and found they were on the Coast of Spaze near

Spaze.

* Carli, as before, p. 585.

* Our Lord of Masferrate, in the English Translation.

1667 *Cape Gato*. From thence they steered their Course for *Catalonia*, and in a few Hours arrived at *Mattalona*.*

Carl.
Mattalona.
Ablona.

HAVING landed with his Companion, whom he had not seen during the Storm, they went to rest at their Convent, which stands on a Hill without the Town. From hence they sailed up to *Ablona*, which is a better Harbour, and went to the *Capuchin* Monastery, seated on a Rock in a Peninsula, joined to the Town by a small Neck of Land; so that the Sea serves for an Inclosure to the Monastery and Garden, which *Carl* thought the finest Situation of any Convent of his Order, the Air being very temperate. There he staid, resolving to return home by Land through *France*, while the rest sailed again for *Sardinia*. After he had rested eight Days in that delicious Place, he set-out with two Companions for *Girona*; so that he saw almost all *Catalonia*, which is a very fruitful Country, and the People extraordinary well-temper'd. From *Girona* he went to *Higuera* on the Borders of *Spain*; whence, crossing some Mountains, he entered upon the Earldom of *Roussillon*, and came to the first Town of it, called *Cerret*.

Carl.
Esper.

FROM *Cerret* he went to *Twy* in the Vale of *Perpignan*, where he passed over a River upon a Bridge that had but one Arch, the Feet whereof rested upon two Hills, so that the Middle of it was a prodigious Height, and frightful to look down. They said it was the highest Arch in all *France*, and the Author never saw any like it in all his Travels. The Country about was full of Soldiers, sent thither from *Languedoc* to quell the People who had revolted to the *Spaniards*, (to whom that Country once belonged) on occasion of raising the Price of Salt.

Perpignan.

PERPIGNAN, which he saw next, is a royal Fort, seated on an high Rock, encompassed by three lofty Walls with good Ditches, and well stored with Cannon. To Appearance it looks impregnable, yet it yielded to the King of *France* after a Siege of eight Months, for want of Provisions, though the Place would hold enough for three Years; but there is a very populous Town adjoining, which hastened their Consumption. The *Capuchin* Monastery is without the Town.

Narbonne.

HAVING passed the Mountains, he came to *Narbonne*, through the Midst of which there runs a River that falls into the Sea a League off. The City is not large, but very populous, as are all the Cities and Towns in *France*. The Churches are not beautiful, but there is such a Resort of People to them, especially upon Holidays, that there is scarce Room for the Priest to turn him-

self at the Altar. The Priests of the Church of *St. Justus* are habited like Monks. The two Steeples have a notable Echo, which is pleasant to hear.

Esper.
Kongor.

He took his Journey through *Languedoc* and *Provence*, but says little of the Towns that lay in his Road. *Beziers* stands on a Hill in a delightful Country, and well watered. Monsieur *de Benzy*, a *Florentine*, was then Bishop: He was afterwards made Archbishop of *Toulouse*, and the King's Embassador at *Madrid*, who allowed him the Revenue of his Bishoprick, till it was bestowed on another. In this Church *Carl* took Notice of a very large Organ over the great Gate, where there are none but the front Pipes; the others being distributed by three and three among the Pillars, which make the Church shake when they play, though it is extraordinary great. This is a notable Piece of Curiosity.

TOLOUSE is a City worth seeing for its *Tolosa*, Greatness, and the Number of its Inhabitants; not forgetting its Plenty of Relics.

AGDE, an ancient Town, where was held Agde's Council called *Agatesi*. In the *Capuchin* Monastery, which is on the Strand, there is a miraculous Image of our Lady; for the Sea having three Times swelled up to the Town, has never inched since the Image was placed there, but rather gone back, for which Reason it is called *Nostre Dame de Oue*.

ARLES, an Archbishoprick, and populous Arles enough.

MARTEQUES, a Place curious to behold, Martequen for it is divided into four Hamlets, built upon the Sea, with Bridges from one to the other. The *Capuchins* have two Monasteries here, one at each End of the Town. In both there are twenty-six Friars, and there being none of any other Order, they hear Confessions there, as they do in *France*, *Spain*, *Germany*, and some Parts of *Italy*. The only Support of this Town is fishing, there being eight hundred Tartans for this Purpose; besides a vast Number of little Boats that cover a great Part of the Sea.

THENCE the Author went to *Aix*, the capital City of *Provence*; next to *Marseilles*, a considerable Town, and of great Trade, yet not so large as he had fancied it. The Harbour is very handsome and safe, more especially for Barks and Gallies, because great Ships cannot go in loaden. There were then twenty-five Gallies laid up close by one another, and in the Midst of them the royal Gallies, which all Vessels that entered the Port saluted with a Gun. Her Stern was finely carved and gilt; yet she was not so big as the royal Gallies of *Spain*, that carried the Em-

* *Carl*, at before, p. 586.

b The same, p. 587.

1667.

Cath.

prels, which he saw at *Cartagena*. This Town has three Forts, of which the new one at the Mouth of the Harbour has three Walls. The King caused the Wall that had enclosed the Side next to the Hill to be thrown-down, to enlarge its Compass, which brought the *Capuchin* Monastery into the Town. It is filled with a vast Multitude of People of all Nations: Several Bodies of (*Romish*) Saints, and Abundance of Relics, are to be seen there, particularly *St. Andrew's Cross*.

Toulon.

St. Tropez.

HERE the Author took Ship for *Cistat* and *Toulon*. This is an indifferent Town, but the Port very considerable, and capable of receiving any Number of the biggest Vessels. There he saw the *Royal Louis*, which was not quite finished: It carried an hundred and twenty Guns, had three Galleries, and the Stern was all gilt, as were the Sides, Head and Cabins. The Gilder told him, they had already laid-out three thousand Crowns in Leaf-Gold. He took the Opportunity of a Vessel bound for *Savona*, and at Night put into *St. Tropez*. Next Day the bad Weather forced them into a Place, where there being but two Houses, at a great Distance from the City *Grasse*, (which stands on a Hill, encompassed by others, so that they could scarce see it at Sea,) they were obliged either to go thither, or starve.

AND now it is high Time that the Author should have some Miracle wrought in his Favour, after all his pious Shifts and Labours. Finding himself somewhat hot with his hectic Fever, which made him unfit to travel like the rest, he lay-down to sleep under a Tree; but Hunger would not suffer him to close his Eyes. Thus quite weary of Life, and not knowing what Course to take, he met a Person who seemed to be of some Note, and said to him, *Father, what do you here all alone?* He answered, the Distemper, so visible in his Face, made him stay there; but that at present Hunger tormented him more than his Fever. The Stranger told him, he came in the covered Felucca that rode there, which he said was his own; adding, that he had caught some Pilchers, and that if he pleased they would sup together. As the Offer was very pleasing,

A lying Mr.

raile,

our Traveller readily accepted it. They went into the Felucca, where two Seamen had made all ready. *How shall we do, said the Gentleman, for we have no Bread but Bisket? Any thing is good in a Time of Need,* replied the Guest, and *I have been often without either Bread or Bisket.* As the Stranger talked to him in Portuguese, *Carli* asked him whether he was a Native of *Portugal*? He answered in the Negative, but said that he had been there sometimes.

Portugal
Kongo

THEY eat and drank, without regarding the Sun, which shined violently hot in their Faces, Hunger making the *Capuchin* lay about him; after which they walked along the Shore discoursing together. Of a sudden *Carli* stepped forward alone to see a Dolphin that made a Noise in the Water, as if he had been fighting with another Fish, and was busy throwing Stones at him. When he had done, he looked about, and found his Benefactor did not follow him. This made him turn back for fear the other should be gone before he could return him Thanks: But, it seems, he could neither find him, nor the Felucca, which put the good Soul almost beside himself; and, indeed, when he reflected upon it, he could not tell what to think. One Thing he knew, which was, that having carefully examined those left aboard the Brigantine, whether they had seen a Felucca that came to the Shore with three Men in it? they answered, they had seen no Creature, though they had been all the while ashore fishing in that little Creek: Whereupon he said no more. Whether it was by the Hands of a Man, or of an Angel, he could not tell, but he felt such unspeakable Comfort, that, (if you will believe him) had his Health permitted, he would certainly have returned to *Kongo*.

NEXT Day they all went aboard, and passing *Villa Nice*, the Port not being safe, went-on to *Villa Franca*. The *Capuchin* Monastery here looks like a Paradise amidst so many high Mountains, and uncouth Rocks. Thence he went aboard a *Genoise* Galley to *Monaca*, a very delightful Place, and of considerable Strength. He continued his Way to *Savona*, but having been forced back, and in Danger of perishing by a Storm,

* *Trampes*, in the *English* Translation

* *Carli*, as before, p. 583.

* He had taken Pet, per-

haps, for leaving his Company so abruptly to throw Stones at a Fish.

* Whether he should relate it as

a Dream, we suppose, or a real Fact. * He was in the right of it, for it is likely such a Forgery would have met with the Ridicule it deserved: Yet the *English* Translator, in his Preface, vouches for both him and *Carli*, that having travelled out of pure Zeal to propagate the Christian (he ought to have said, the *Romish*) Religion, it would be unchristian in call in Question the Truth of their Relation: That the Reader will scarce find any thing but what is credible enough; and that being religious Men, they therefore added no romantic Invention of their own. They may be suspected the more for that very Reason, and this Fiction is a Proof. A Protestant can never suppose an idolatrous Priest to be a Favourite of Heaven: But in case he had been such, it may be presumed the Deity would have wrought a Miracle on him (sooner, and cured him of his Distemper, which would have enabled him to pursue the Design of his Mission in *Kongo* without Interruption, as well as to travel to *Grasse*; and thus a Miracle upon a substantial Occasion, would have saved one upon a trifling Account: But the pious Fraud would then have been more easily detected.